

OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL

EXCAVATOR SV100-2A (US) (S/N AH100 & Above)



Read this manual carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or machine trouble.

This manual is the permanent part of your machine, when you sell your machine, hand it together with machine.

This machine had been designed by metric. Accordingly, dimensions mentioned in this manual are metric.

Discrimination of right side and left side for the machine are determined based on the machine posture, in where the blade is in front. i.e. Right side of the operator is machine's right side when the operator seats toward the blade. The machine operated and serviced correctly has the warranty that is the YANMAR product support program. However, in case of the abuse or modification without permission of YANMAR, the warranty does not become the subject and also product improvement program may not become the subject.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

REFERENCE INFORMATION

Write the correct information for your YANMAR Excavator in the spaces below. Always use these numbers when referring to your YANMAR Excavator.

:	
:	
:	
er :	
ress :	
1e :	
•	ess :

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 WARNING

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

In case of exporting this product and providing the related technical material to non-residents in Japan or residents overseas, it is required to comply with the export and trade control laws and regulations of Japan and other relevant countries.

Please be sure to follow the necessary procedure.

1. Introduction

This Operation and Maintenance Manual for the YANMAR SV100-2A Excavator is designed to provide you with important information and suggestions necessary for using the machine with safety and efficiency. Please be sure to read through the manual before using the machine, to make yourself familiar with the procedures and instructions for operating, inspecting and servicing. Keep in mind that failure to observe the precautions given in the manual or using any procedures not prescribed in the manual may cause a serious accident.

A WARNING

Improper use of the machine may lead to hazards which can result in death or serious injury.

Personnel engaged in operating and maintaining the machine are required to familiarize themselves with the contents of the manual before setting about their job.

- Do not attempt to operate the machine before making yourself familiar with the contents of the manual.
- Personnel responsible for using the machine must keep the manual at hand and review it periodically.
- If the manual should be lost or damaged, promptly order a new copy from the dealer.
- When you transfer the machine to another user, always transfer the manual as well.
- We at YANMAR provide customers with products in compliance with applicable your country's regulations and industrial standards. If you are using a YANMAR machine purchased abroad, the machine may lack some safety devices. Please consult your dealer to confirm whether or not that machine is in compliance with applicable your country's regulations and industrial standards.
- Some machine specifications may differ from those which are described in this manual because of improvements in its design and performance. If you have any questions about the contents of the manual, don't hesitate to contact your dealer.
- Important safety instructions have been presented throughout this manual, and have been summarized in PART ONE : SAFETY. Be sure to review these pages and pay heed to those safety instructions before proceeding to operate the machine.

2. Safety Information

The following Signal Words have been used in this Manual and on the Safety Signs to indicate the seriousness of the hazards that could be encountered by failing to comply with the applicable Product Warnings, as follows:





IMPORTANT

The word "DANGER" indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury. "DANGER" is limited to the most extreme situations.

The word "WARNING" indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

The word "CAUTION" indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.

The signal word "IMPORTANT" has been utilized in this Manual to denote those User Directions that must be followed to assure the safe operation and maintenance of the Excavator.

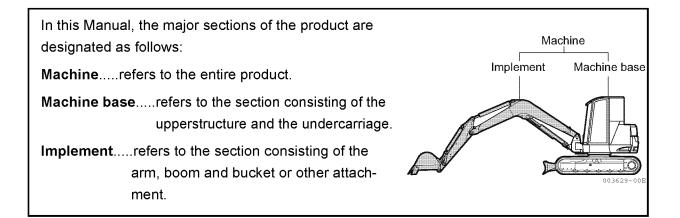
• WARNING : Never attempt to operate or service this Excavator until you have first read and understood all of the applicable Product Warnings and User Directions that are set forth in this Manual and on the Safety Signs that are affixed to this Excavator.

The failure to comply with all relevant Safety Instructions could result in bodily injury.

• WARNING : Never modify the design of this Excavator or its engine; never remove or disable any of the installed safety guards or devices; and never use any unauthorized attachments in the operation of this equipment.

The implementation of any unauthorized design modifications or the use of unauthorized attachments could result in bodily injury.

Furthermore, since those actions would expressly violate the terms of Yanmar's Product Warranty, the applicable Warranty would also be voided.



3. Product Overview

3.1 Intended uses

The SV100-2A Excavator is intended to perform the following tasks:

- Digging
- Leveling of ground
- Shoveling
- Ditching and Guttering
- Loading

For the details on how to work with the machine, refer to Section "3.13 Operations using the bucket" on page 181.

The machine should not be used for unintended tasks

3.2 Break in period

The machine should not be subjected to severe stresses and loads during the initial break in period although it has been prepared well and stringently inspected before shipping. Otherwise the machine's performance may be affected and its service life shortened. Thus it is essential to break in the machine for the first approx. 100 service hours (reading of the hour meter). In breaking in the machine:

- You should warm up the engine by idling for 5 minutes before starting operations.
- You should not operate the machine under heavy loads or at high speed.
- · You should not start and accelerate the engine too abruptly, or stop it too abruptly.
- · You should not change travel direction too abruptly.

The safety instructions for operation and maintenance that are presented in this Manual are applicable to each of the intended tasks. Never misuse this machine by violating the applicable safety instructions or by attempting to perform unintended tasks, because of the danger of serious bodily injury.

3.3 Conditions to be met to assure compliance with EPA emission standards *Conditions de conformité avec les standards d'émission EPA*

An EPA approved engine has been installed in this machine. The following are the conditions that must be met to assure that emissions during operation will meet EPA standards. Always comply with all of these requirements.

- The prevailing atmospheric conditions should be as follows.
- (1) Ambient temperature: -4 to $104^{\circ}F$ (-20 to $40^{\circ}C$)
- (2) Relative humidity: 80% or lower
- The fuel and lube oil used should be as follows.
- (1) Fuel: Diesel light oil ASTM D975 No.1D S15 or No.2D S15 (ISO 8217 DMX)
 - The fuel cetane number should be equal to 45 or higher.
 - The sulfur content must not exceed 15 ppm by volume. A higher sulfur content fuel may cause sulfuric acid corrosion in the cylinders of the engine. Especially in U.S.A. and Canada, Ultra Low Sulfur fuel should be used.
 - The Water and sediment in the fuel should not exceed 0.05% by volume.
 - Other detailed items and biodiesel should comply with the requirements stated in Section "2.1 Diesel fuel" on page 256.
- (2) Engine oil: API service categories CJ-4, ACEA service categories E6 or JASO service category DH-2
- Never remove the seals limiting the amount of fuel injected and the speed.
- Always perform the required periodic maintenance.

Follow the basic guidelines outlined in Section "7. Maintenance Table" on page 272 of this manual, and keep a record of the results. Pay particular attention to these important points: replacing the lube oil and lube oil filter; cleaning the air cleaner element and the radiator fins.

Un moteur thermique agréé EPA est installé sur cette machine. A la suite figurent les conditions d'utilisation permettant de satisfaire au standard EPA; il est impératif de les respecter.

- Environnement extérieur:
- (1) Température ambiante : ·4 à 104°F (·20 à 40°C)
- (2) Humidité relative : 80 % au moins
- Carburant et huiles à utiliser
- (1) Carburant : Diesel léger ASTM D975 No.1D S15 ou No.2D S15 (ISO 8217 DMX)
 - L'indice de cétane du carburant doit être de 45 ou plus.
 - La teneur en soufre ne doit pas dépasser 15 ppm par volume. Une teneur plus importante de soufre pourrait causer la corrosion par l'acide sulfurique des cylindres du moteur. En particulier aux États-Unis d'Amérique et au Canada, un carburant en très faible teneur en soufre doit être utilisé.

- La teneur en eau et en sédiment du carburant ne doit pas dépasser 0,05 % par volume.
- Pour plus d'informations sur les carburants biodiesels, conformez-vous aux conditions énumérées à la section « Carburant » (page 256).
- (2) Huile moteur : API Catégorie d'entretien CJ·4, ACEA catégories d'entretien E6 ou JASO catégorie d'entretien DH·2
- Ne pas retirer les joints limitant la quantité de carburant injecté et la vitesse
- Respecter les inspections périodiques

Suivre les indications figurant dans ce manuel (Table de maintenance 7) et garder une trace des résultats. Faire très attention aux points importants suivant: remplacer l'huile et le filtre à huile, nettoyer l'élément de filtre à air et le radiateur.

3.4 Emission system warranty *Garantie du systéme antipollution*

YANMAR POWER TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD. Emission Control System Warranty - USA Only

■ Your warranty rights and obligations

California

The California Air Resources Board (CARB), the United State Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and YANMAR POWER TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD. hereafter referred to as YANMAR, are pleased to explain the **emission control system warranty** on your 2020, 2021, or 2022 model year industrial compression-ignition engine.

California-certified, new off-road compression-ignition engines must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. In the remaining forty nine (49) states, new non-road compression-ignition engines must be designed, built and equipped to meet the United States EPA emissions standards. YANMAR must warrant the emission control system on your engine for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your engine.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the air induction system, the electronic control system, EGR (Exhaust Gas Recirculation) system and the exhaust gas after treatment (diesel particulate filter system, urea SCR system). Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, YANMAR will repair your off-road compression-ignition engine at no charge to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's Warranty Period

2020, 2021, or 2022 model year off-road compression-ignition engines are warranted for the periods listed below. If any emission-related part on your engine is found to be defective during the applicable warranty period, the part will be repaired or replaced by YANMAR.

If your engine is certified as	And its maximum power is	And its rated speed is	Then its warranty period is
Variable speed or constant speed	kW < 19	Any speed	2,000 hours or two (2) years whichever comes first. In the absence of a device to measure the hours of use, the engine has a warranty period of two (2) years.
Constant speed	19 ≤ kW < 37	3,000 rpm or higher	2,000 hours or two (2) years whichever comes first. In the absence of a device to measure the hours of use, the engine has a warranty period of two (2) years.
Constant speed	19 ≤ kW < 37	Less than 3,000 rpm	3,000 hours or five (5) years whichever comes first. In the absence of a device to measure the hours of use, the engine has a warranty period of five (5) years.
Variable speed	19 ≤ kW < 37	Any speed	3,000 hours or five (5) years whichever comes first. In the absence of a device to measure the hours of use, the engine has a warranty period of five (5) years.
Variable speed or constant speed	kW ≥ 37	Any speed	3,000 hours or five (5) years whichever comes first. In the absence of a device to measure the hours of use, the engine has a warranty period of five (5) years.

■ Warranty Coverage

This warranty is transferable to each subsequent purchaser for the duration of the warranty period. YANMAR recommends that repair or replacement of any warranted part will be performed at an authorized YANMAR dealer.

Warranted parts not scheduled for replacement as required maintenance in the owner's manual shall be warranted for the warranty period. Warranted parts scheduled for replacement as required maintenance in the owner's manual are warranted for the period of time prior to the first scheduled replacement. Any warranted parts scheduled for replacement as required maintenance that are repaired or replaced under warranty shall be warranted for the remaining period of time prior to the first scheduled replacement. Any part not scheduled for replacement that is repaired or replaced under warranty shall be warranted for the remaining warranty period.

During the warranty period, YANMAR is liable for damages to other engine components caused by the failure of any warranted part during the warranty period.

Any replacement part which is functionally identical to the original equipment part in all respects may be used in the maintenance or repair of your engine, and shall not reduce YANMAR's warranty obligations. Add-on or modified parts that are not exempted may not be used. The use of any non-exempted add-on or modified parts shall be grounds for disallowing a warranty.

Warranted Parts

This warranty covers engine components that are a part of the emission control system of the engine as delivered by YANMAR to the original retail purchaser. Such components may include the following:

- Fuel injection system (including Altitude compensation system)
- Cold start enrichment system
- Intake manifold and Air intake throttle valve
- Turbocharger systems
- Exhaust manifold and exhaust throttle valve
- Positive crankcase ventilation system
- Charge Air Cooling systems
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) systems
- Exhaust gas after treatment (diesel particulate filter system)
- Electronic Control units, sensors, solenoids and wiring harnesses used in above systems
- Hoses, belts, connectors and assemblies used in above systems
- Emission Control Information Labels

Since emissions related parts may vary slightly between models, certain models may not contain all of these parts and other models may contain the functional equivalents.

Exclusions

Failures other than those arising from defects in material or workmanship are not covered by this warranty. The warranty does not extend to the following: malfunctions caused by abuse, misuse, improper adjustment, modification, alteration, tampering, disconnection, improper or inadequate maintenance, or use of non-recommended fuels and lubricating oils; accident-caused damage and replacement of expendable items made in connection with scheduled maintenance. YAN-MAR disclaims any responsibility for incidental or consequential such as loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of equipment/engine or commercial loss.

Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

As the off-road compression-ignition engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. YANMAR recommends that you retain all documentation, including receipts, covering maintenance on your off-road compression-ignition engine, but YANMAR cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts, or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

YANMAR may deny your warranty coverage if your off-road compression-ignition engine or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

Your engine is designed to operate on diesel fuel only. Use of any other fuel may result in your engine no longer operating in compliance with CARB and EPA emissions requirements.

You are responsible for initiating the warranty process. You are responsible for presenting your engine to an authorized YANMAR dealer or distributor as soon as a problem exists. The warranty

repairs should be completed by the dealer as expeditiously as possible. If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or would like information on the nearest YAN-MAR dealer or authorized service center, you should contact YANMAR America Corporation. Website: http://us.yanmar.com/ E-mail: CS_support@yanmar.com

Toll free telephone number: 1-800-872-2867, 1-855-416-7091

YANMAR POWER TECHNOLOGY Co., Ltd. Garantie de conformité du système de contrôle des émissions - États-Unis seulement

■ Votre garantie : vos droits et vos obligations

• Californie

Le California Air Resources Board (CARB), l'Agence américaine de protection de l'environnement (EPA) et YANMAR POWER TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD. ci-après appelée YANMAR, se font un plaisir de vous expliquer les conditions de la **garantie de conformité du système antipollution** de votre moteur industriel à allumage par compression des années-modèles 2020, 2021, ou 2022.

Les nouveaux moteurs non routiers à allumage par compression certifiés en Californie doivent être conçus, construits et équipés de façon à satisfaire les normes antipollution strictes en vigueur dans cet État. Dans les quarante-neuf (49) autres États, les nouveaux moteurs non routiers à allumage par compression doivent être conçus, construits et équipés afin de respecter les normes strictes de réglementation antipollution de l'EPA. YANMAR doit garantir le système de contrôle des émissions de votre moteur pour les périodes indiquées cidessous, à la condition qu'ils n'aient pas fait l'objet d'un usage abusif, d'une négligence ou d'un manque d'entretien.

Votre système antipollution peut comporter des éléments tels que le système d'injection de carburant, le système d'induction d'air, le système de contrôle électronique, le système de recyclage des gaz d'échappement et le système d'échappement après traitement (filtre à particules diesel, système de RCS par injection d'urée). D'autres pièces antipollution peuvent être comprises, notamment des tuyaux, des courroies et des raccords.

Dans l'éventualité d'un problème couvert par la garantie, YANMAR réparera gratuitement le moteur non routier à allumage par compression, ce qui inclut les frais pour le diagnostic, les pièces et la main-d'œuvre.

Période de garantie par le fabricant

Les moteurs non routiers à allumage par compression des années modèles 2020, 2021, ou 2022 sont garantis pendant les périodes indiquées ci dessous. Si toute composante de votre moteur en lien avec les émissions est jugée défectueuse pendant la période de garantie applicable, cette pièce sera réparée ou remplacée par YANMAR.

Si votre moteur est certifié	A une vitesse maximale de	Une vitesse nominale de	La période de garantie est de
Vitesse variable ou constante	kW<19	Toutes les vitesses	2000 heures ou deux (2) ans, selon l'éventualité qui sur- vient en premier. S'il est impossible de déterminer le nombre d'heures d'utilisation du moteur, sa période de garantie est de deux (2) ans.
Vitesse constante	19≤kW<37	3 000 t/m et plus	2 000 heures ou deux (2) ans, selon l'éventualité qui sur- vient en premier. S'il est impossible de déterminer le nombre d'heures d'utilisation du moteur, sa période de garantie est de deux (2) ans.
Vitesse constante	19≤kW<37	Moins de 3 000 t/m	3 000 heures ou cinq (5) ans, selon l'éventualité qui sur- vient en premier. S'il est impossible de déterminer le nombre d'heures d'utilisation du moteur, sa période de garantie est de cinq (5) ans.
Vitesse variable	$19 \le kW < 37$	Toutes les vitesses	3 000 heures ou cinq (5) ans, selon l'éventualité qui sur- vient en premier. S'il est impossible de déterminer le nombre d'heures d'utilisation du moteur, sa période de garantie est de cinq (5) ans.
Vitesse variable ou constante	<i>kW≥3</i> 7	Toutes les vitesses	3 000 heures ou cinq (5) ans, selon l'éventualité qui sur- vient en premier. S'il est impossible de déterminer le nombre d'heures d'utilisation du moteur, sa période de garantie est de cinq (5) ans.

Couverture de la garantie

Cette garantie est transférable à tout acquéreur subséquent pour la durée de la garantie. YANMAR recommande que la réparation ou le remplacement de toutes les pièces sous garantie soit effectué chez un concessionnaire YANMAR agréé.

Toute pièce garantie, pour laquelle le guide du propriétaire ne prévoit aucun remplacement dans le calendrier des entretiens requis, est garantie pour la période de garantie précisée. Toute pièce garantie, pour laquelle le guide du propriétaire prévoit le remplacement dans le cadre d'un entretien requis, est garantie pour la période précédant le premier remplacement prévu. Toute pièce garantie, pour laquelle un remplacement est prévu dans le cadre d'un entretien requis, qui est réparée ou remplacée pendant la période de garantie, sera garantie pour la période de garantie restante avant le premier remplacement prévu. Toute pièce garantie, pour laquelle aucun remplacement n'est prévu et qui est réparée ou remplacée pendant la période de garantie, sera garantie pour la période de garantie.

Pendant la période de garantie, YANMAR est responsable des dommages causés aux autres éléments du moteur par le bris d'une pièce toujours garantie.

Toute pièce de remplacement dont la fonction est identique à la pièce originale peut être utilisée pour l'entretien ou la réparation de votre moteur sans réduire les obligations de YAN-MAR en fonction de la garantie. Les pièces ajoutées ou modifiées peuvent être utilisées à moins qu'il y ait contre-indication. L'utilisation de toute pièce ajoutée ou modifiée contreindiquée sera un motif de révocation de la garantie.

Pièces garanties

Cette garantie couvre les composantes du moteur qui font partie du système antipollution du moteur tel que livré par YANMAR à l'acheteur original. Ces composantes peuvent comprendre les éléments suivants :

- Système d'injection de carburant (y compris le système de compensation d'altitude)
- · Système d'enrichissement pour démarrage à froid
- Tubulure d'admission et papillon de la soupape d'admission d'air
- Système de turbochargement
- Collecteur d'échappement et papillon d'échappement
- Système de ventilation positive du carter
- · Systèmes de refroidissement de l'air de suralimentation
- Système de recirculation des gaz d'échappement
- Système de traitement des gaz d'échappement (système de filtres à particules pour le diesel)
- Boitiers, capteurs, solénoïdes et faisceaux de câblage du boitier de commande utilisés dans les systèmes indiqués ci-dessus
- Flexibles, courroies, connecteurs et autres ensembles utilisés dans les systèmes indiqués cidessus
- Étiquettes d'information sur le contrôle des émissions

Comme les pièces du système antipollution peuvent varier légèrement d'un modèle à l'autre, elles peuvent avoir une fonction équivalente ou ne pas être présentes sur certains modèles.

Exclusions

Les défectuosités autres que celles qui résultent d'un vice de matière ou de fabrication ne sont pas couvertes par la présente garantie. La garantie ne couvre pas les mauvais fonctionnements découlant de tout usage abusif, mauvaise utilisation, ajustement inapproprié, modification, altération, trafiquage, déconnexion, entretien inapproprié ou inadéquat ou utilisation de carburants et d'huiles de graissage non recommandés, ainsi que tout accident ayant causé des dommages et exigé le remplacement d'articles de consommation en lien avec l'entretien prévu. YANMAR n'assume aucune responsabilité pour tout dommage incident ou conséquent, comme une perte de temps, des inconvénients, l'impossibilité d'utiliser l'équipement ou le moteur ou toute perte commerciale.

Obligations du propriétaire

En tant que propriétaire d'un moteur non routier à allumage par compression, vous êtes responsable d'effectuer l'entretien requis indiqué dans votre guide de propriétaire. YANMAR recommande que vous conserviez toute documentation, y compris les reçus, couvrant l'entretien de votre moteur non routier à allumage par compression, mais YANMAR ne pourra refuser d'effectuer les réparations couvertes par la garantie simplement du fait que vous n'avez pas conservé ces reçus ou en raison de votre manquement à effectuer tous les entretiens prévus.

YANMAR peut refuser d'effectuer les réparations couvertes par la garantie si votre moteur non routier à allumage par compression ou une pièce de celui-ci a arrêté de fonctionner en raison d'un usage abusif, d'une négligence, d'un entretien inapproprié ou de modifications non approuvées.

Votre moteur est conçu pour ne fonctionner qu'avec du carburant diesel. L'utilisation de tout autre carburant dans le moteur pourra entraîner un fonctionnement non conforme aux exigences émises par le CARB et l'EPA.

En tant que propriétaire, vous devez mettre en marche le processus de garantie. Vous avez la responsabilité de confier votre moteur à un concessionnaire ou un distributeur agréé YAN-MAR dès qu'un problème survient. Les réparations couvertes par la garantie seront effectuées par le concessionnaire aussi rapidement que possible. Pour toute question relative à vos droits et à vos obligations en fonction de la garantie, ou pour toute information relative au concessionnaire ou au centre d'entretien autorisé YANMAR le plus proche, contactez YANMAR America Corporation.

Site Internet: http://us.yanmar.com/ E· mail: CS_support@yanmar.com Numéros verts: 1·855·416·7091, 1·800·872·2867

3.5 Acquisition of Information on Machines in Operation and Handling of Acquired Information

The controller of this machine stores main data on the operational status of the machine. For the engine, for example, the controller stores information of a purely mechanical nature including the cumulative engine operating time and does not record customer-related data such as audio clips or video footage of conversations or positional information.

Data stored can be acquired using Yanmar's failure diagnosis tool. Yanmar may acquire and use the data acquired for technical diagnosis or research and development aimed at the provision of better services.

With the exception of the cases listed below, neither Yanmar nor entities to which it outsources work will disclose stored data to third parties.

- Cases where the customer (the machine owner) has consented to the provision of data to third parties
- Cases where the provision of such data is required by an enforceable order such as a court order.
- Cases of the provision to public agencies of data that has been processed so that users of said data cannot identify the machine concerned for purposes such as statistical processing.

4. Operation License

Before you operate this machine, confirm the licensing requirements that are applicable to the operation of this machine.

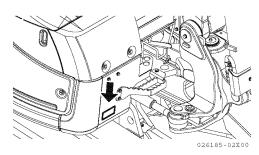
Comply with all applicable laws.

Ask your dealer about licensing requirements.

5. Ordering Replacement Parts and Service Calls

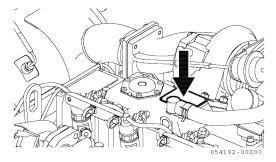
5.1 Location of machine serial number plate

The machine serial number plate is located on the turning frame as illustrated at right. Never remove the plate for any reason.



5.2 Location of engine serial number plate

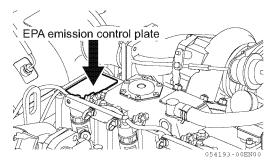
The engine serial number plate is located on the top of the cylinder head cover. Never remove the plate for any reason.

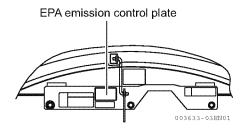


5.3 Location of EPA emission control plates Localisation de la plaque signalétique EPA

The EPA emission control plates are located on the engine and engine hood as illustrated at right. Never remove the plates for any reason.

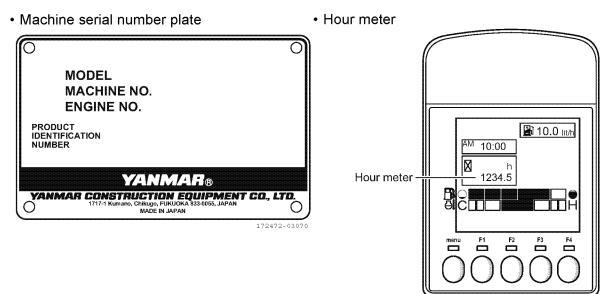
La plaque signalétique est fixée sur le moteur (voir illustration à droite). En aucun cas ne retirer cette plaque.





5.4 Ordering replacement parts and service calls

When ordering replacement parts or calling for service, let your dealer know the model designation, the machine serial number, and the engine serial number as well as the reading of the hour meter.



47436-03EN00

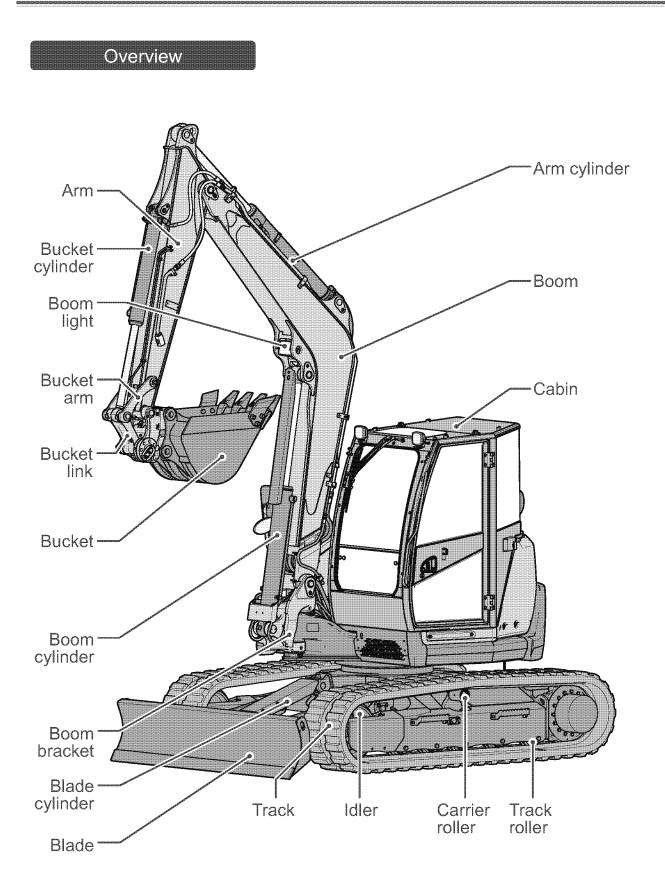
QUICK GUIDE

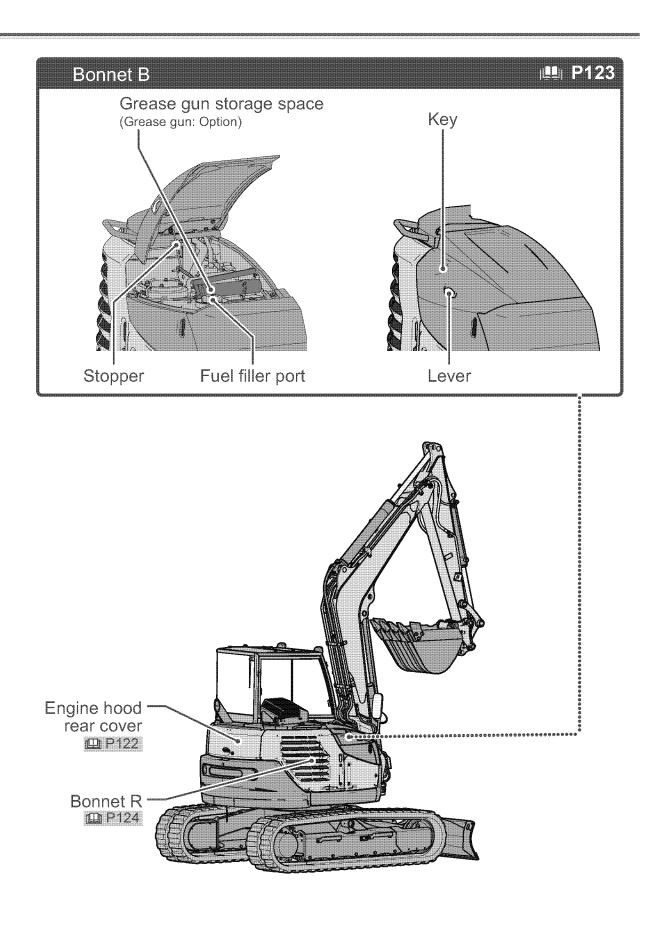
Identification of Important Parts
Safety
Operation
Maintenance
Optional Parts and Attachments
Troubleshooting

This Quick Guide is intended to provide you with an understanding of the operational flow of this machine to help you find things you need to know when the need arises. Reference pages of the main text of this manual indicated in this guide must be read to gain detailed information you need and use the machine correctly.

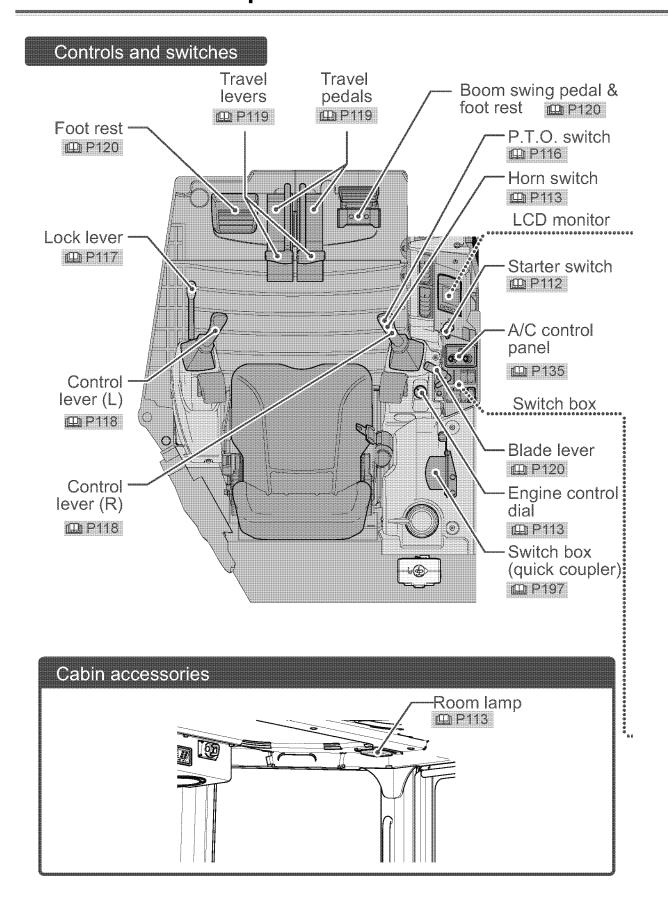
Identification of Important Parts

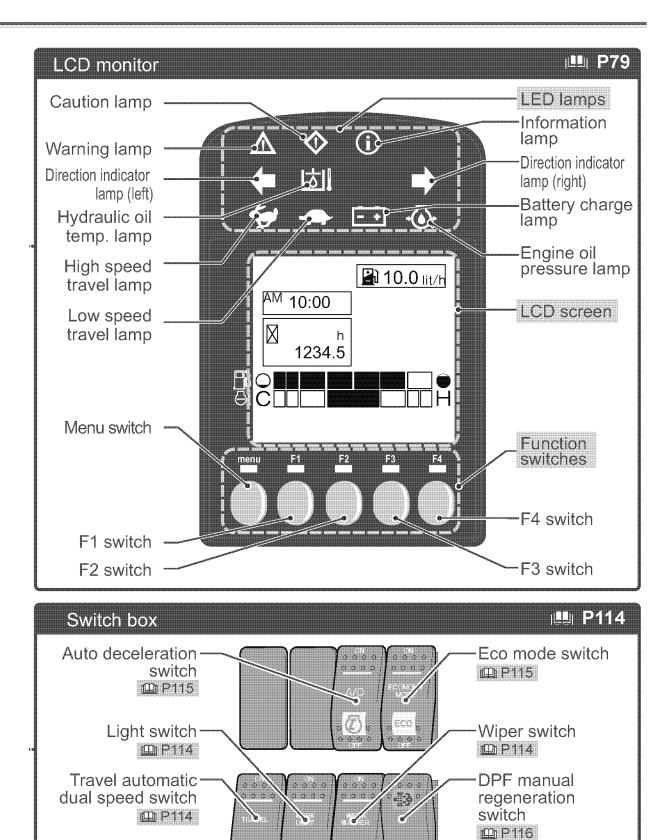
18





Identification of Important Parts



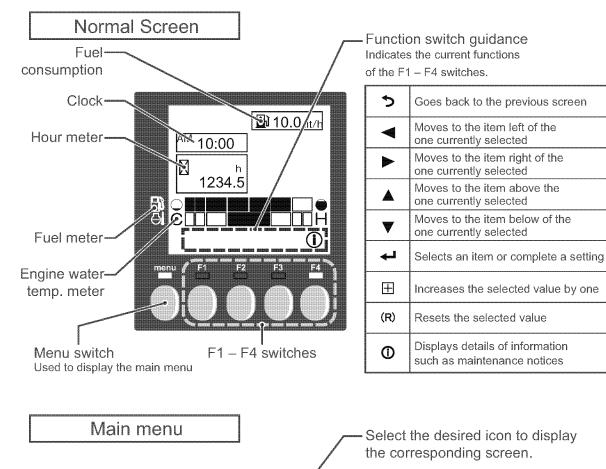


Ö,

0 0 0 0

Identification of Important Parts

LCD Monitor Displays



F3

	Displays the normal screen.
¥	Displays the maintenance screen.
	Displays the Machine Operation Management screen.
	Displays the Settings screen.

In case machine trouble oc	curs			
LED lamps The lamp corresponding to the error flashes or lights up	Error icons	Icons represen are displayed.	ting the correspond	ling errors
If the warning lamp flashes and the	lcon	Error description	Warning/caution lamp	Corrective measures
Warning lamp operation and take necessary corrective measures.		Abnormal engine cooling water temperature	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to "Troubleshooting" on page 29.
Caution lamp take necessary corrective measures as soon as possible.	-@-	Abnormal engine oil pressure	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to "Troubleshooting" on page 29.
	2000	Insufficient battery charge	Caution lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to "Troubleshooting" on page 29.
<u>₩ 10:00</u>	G	Clogging of air cleaner	Caution lamp flashing	Stop the engine, and check and clean the air cleaner according to "Checking and cleaning the air cleaner" on page 301.
	.	Request for DPF* manual regeneration	Caution lamp flashing	Perform DPF manual regeneration according to "3.25 Handling diesel particulate filter (DPF)" on page 218.
	=13	Abnormality related to nitrogen oxide (NOx) in the exhaust gas	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup and contact the nearest dealer.
Ruzzer eten ison When this icon is displayed,	\bigcirc	Abnormality related to particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup and contact the nearest dealer.
Buzzer stop icon when this icon is displayed, pressing the F4 switch will stop the buzzer. Error code : Refer to page 343	田	Insufficient amount of fuel	Caution lamp flashing	Refill the fuel tank
Entre code . Itelen to page 545		Other errors	Warning or caution lamp flashing	Check the error code and contact the nearest dealer.
Information display	上;	exhaust gas temp regeneration. Mal	icate a failure but in perature has risen to ke sure that there ar s in the vicinity of the	high levels due to DPF re no persons or
Information lamp This lamp flashes to indicate	***********		***************************************	: Diesel particulate filter
the existence of information.	-Informatio	N ICON of infor	on is displayed to inc mation. Pressing the ng of information det	F4 switch allows
	Icon Description Reference			
▲ 10:00	SET	Notice of date time settings	and	Procedure for setting the date and time - page107
	6 6 250h/ 250h	maintenance i the maintenan Identify what ea icons means ar	nours of operation tems have reach ace interval. ach of the displaye ad perform necess according to the ven on their	ed _{- page 89} d

Safety



Basic Precautions

|**■**|| P36

Safety devices/ Proper clothing/ Prohibit modification/ Source of ignition

Operating Precautions

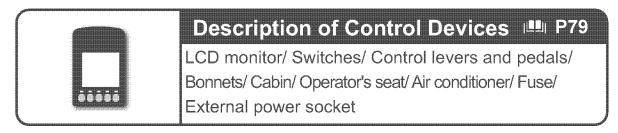
|**■**|| P42

Before starting engine/ Starting engine, working and parking/ Transportation/ Battery/ Towing

*****	Precautions for Servicing	IIIII P57
S	Before servicing/ During servicing	
)



Operation

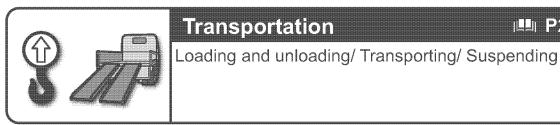


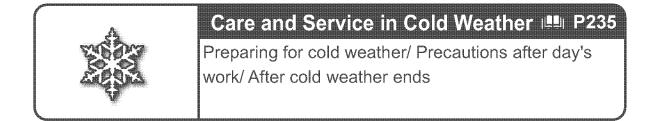
Operating Instructions

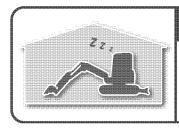
121 P143

111 P230

Starting and stopping engine/ Traveling, steering and stopping/ Operating implement/ Parking/ Replacing bucket/ Quick coupler/ P.T.O./ DPF







Long-term Storage

11 P238

Before storing/ Storing/ Using machine again

Troubleshooting

|E|| P241

Phenomena that do not constitute faults/ Towing/ If the battery is overdischarged/ Troubleshooting

 \square

h 1234.5

Precautions for Servicing

IIIII P252

Hour meter/ Genuine parts/ Oil and grease/ Cleaning machine/ High water and oil temperatures/ Replenishing oil/ Welding/ Fire/ Before and after working

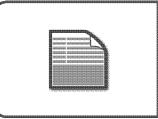
	Basic Servicing Practices	55
	Oils, fuel, and cooling water/ Electrical equipment/	
9 37 \	Hydraulic system	85333888888

Consumables	IIII P266
Engine oil filter/ Hydraulic oil tank return Line filter/ Fuel filter/ Air cleaner/ Bucket	filter/

Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range 1881 P267
Fuel and oil/ Cooling water

Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts
Required tools/ Torque table





Maintenance Table

11 P272

Table of service time intervals/ Service intervals when using hydraulic breaker

Procedures for Maintenance P277

First services/ Nonperiodic services/ Every 50, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 1500, 2000 and 3000 service hours

Specifications and Dimensional Diagrams III P328 Weight/ Working range and performance/ Engine/ Dimensions

Optional Parts and Attachments

General Precautions	IIII P332
Safety precautions/ Precautions for mounti attachment (implement)	ing

Contact your dealer about the measures shown in Service in the list below. If there is any abnormality or trouble whose cause is unknown other than those shown below, ask your dealer for repair.

Engine

Problem	Cause	Measure
Engine oil pressure alarm lamp lights up.	Shortage of engine oil	Replenish engine oil. P147
	Too much engine oil	Check engine oil level and adjust.
	Clogged engine oil filter	Replace engine oil and engine oil filter.
	Defective engine oil pressure switch or wiring	Check and repair. Service
Error indicating abnormal engine cooling water temp. is displayed.	Insufficient amount of cooling water	Check cooling water level and replenish.
	Clogged or broken radiator fin	Check radiator fin. Clean or repair.
	Cooling water leakage	Check and repair. Service
	Loose or broken fan belt	Adjust fan belt tension or replace.
	Internal contamination of cooling water system	Replace cooling water. Clean inside of cooling water system. P318
	Defective cooling water pump	Check and repair. Service
Battery charge alarm lamp lights up.	Loose or broken fan belt	Adjust fan belt tension or replace.
	Defective battery	Check battery electrolyte level and replenish. Recharge or replace battery.
	Insufficient power generation of altemator	Adjust fan belt tension or replace.
Tuming on starter motor does not start engine.	Shortage of fuel	Refill fuel tank.P148Release the air.P306
	Air mixed in fuel system	Repair portion from which air enters fuel system. Service Release the air. P306
	Improper fuel	Replace fuel with specified one.
	Clogged fuel filter	Replace fuel filter.
	Abnormal fuel injection	Check and repair. Service
	Improper compression	Check and repair. Service

Starter motor does not tum or tums slowly.	Insufficient battery voltage Check battery electrolyte le and replenish.	
		Recharge or replace battery.
	Defective wiring system	Check and repair. Service
	Defective starter switch	Check and repair. Service
	Blown out slow blow fuse	Replace slow blow fuse P140
	Defective starter motor	Check and repair. Service
Dark fumes come out of machine.	Overload	Lower working load.
	Clogged or contaminated air cleaner element.	Clean or replace air cleaner element.
	Improper fuel	Replace fuel with specified one.
	Abnormal fuel spray pattern of fuel injection valve	Check and repair. Service
	Improper compression	Check and repair. Service
	Malfunction of EGR valve	Check and repair. Service
Exhaust color is white or bluish white.	Improper fuel	Replace fuel with specified one.
	Abnormal fuel injection	Check and repair. Service
	Too much engine oil	Check and adjust engine oil level.
	Combustion or abnormal consumption of engine oil	Check and repair. Service

Electrical equipment

Problem	Cause	Measure	
LED lamp does not light up when starter switch is turned on.	Defective wiring system or burned out lamp.	Check and repair. Service	
Light is dark even while engine is running at full speed.	Defective wiring system	Check and repair. Service	
	Defective alternator	Check and repair. Service	

Machine performance

Problem	Cause	Measure
Power or speed of moving part is low.	Deteriorated function caused by worn hydraulic pump	Replace hydraulic pump. Service
	Operating pressure of system relief valve or circuit relief valve in control valve is lower than set value.	Check and repair control valve. Service
	Broken hydraulic cylinder	Check and repair. Service
	Insufficient amount of hydraulic oil	Check hydraulic oil level and replenish.
	Clogged filter	Check filter. Clean or replace. Service
Upper structure does not swing or does not swing smoothly.	Insufficient amount of grease	Check and grease. 👜 P154
	Defective swing brake valve	Check and repair. Service
	Defective swing motor	Check and repair. Service
	Swing brake is not released.	Check and repair. Service
Hydraulic oil temp. is too high.	Insufficient amount of hydraulic oil	Check hydraulic oil level and replenish.
	Overload	Lower working load.
Machine does not travel straight.	Improperly adjusted crawler or foreign material caught	Adjust or check.
	Defective hydraulic motor	Check and repair. Service
	Defective hydraulic pump	Check and repair. Service
	Defective control valve	Check and repair. Service
	Broken sprocket, idler or track roller	Check and repair. Service

CONTENTS

1	Introduction	1
2	Safety Information	
3	Product Overview	3
4	Operation License	
5	Ordering Replacement Parts and Service Calls	15
QUICK	GUIDE	17
SAFET	/	35
1	Basic Precautions	36
2	Operating Precautions	42
3	Precautions for Servicing	57
4	Safety Messages (Warning Labels)	66
OPERA	TION	75
1	Identification of Important Parts	77
2	Description of Control Devices	79
3	Operating Instructions	143
4	Transportation	230
5	Care and Service in Cold Weather	235
6	Long-term Storage	238
7	Troubleshooting	241
MAINTE	NANCE	251
1	Precautions for Servicing	252
2	Basic Servicing Practices	255
3	Consumables	266
4	Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range	267
5	Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts	268
6	Replacing Essential Parts Periodically	270
7	Maintenance Table	272
8	Procedures for Maintenance	277
SPECIF	ICATIONS AND DIMENSIONAL DIAGRAMS	327
1	Specifications and Dimensional Diagrams	328
OPTION	AL PARTS AND ATTACHMENTS	331
1	General Precautions	
APPEN		337

SAFETY

Basic Precautions

Operating Precautions

Precautions for Servicing

Safety Messages (Warning Labels)

Never attempt to operate or service this Excavator until you have first read and understood all of the applicable Safety Instructions that are set forth in this Manual. The failure to comply with all relevant Safety Instructions could result in bodily injury.

This "SAFETY" Part includes safety instructions for optional parts and attachments.

36 1.Basic Precautions 🔺 WARNING These instructions should be strictly followed for the safety of you, others and your machine.

1. Basic Precautions

Follow safety rules at your workplace

- The operation and servicing of this machine is restricted to qualified persons.
- When operating or servicing the machine, follow all the safety rules, precautions and procedures.
- Any work performed by a team or with a signal person should be conducted in accordance with signals agreed on beforehand.

Install safety devices

- Make sure that all guards and covers are installed in their correct position. If any of them are damaged, repair them immediately.
- The proper use of all safety devices, such as lock lever, should be well understood by the machine operator.
- Never remove the safety devices. Always make sure that they operate properly. For lock lever, refer to Section "2.3 Control levers and pedals" on page 117.
- · Incorrect operation of the safety devices could cause serious bodily injury.

Wear proper clothing and safety items

- Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry that can be caught on the control levers and other machine parts. Also avoid wearing working clothes stained with oil as they can ignite.
- avoid wearing working clothes stained with oil as they can ignite.
 Be sure to wear a helmet, safety goggles, safety shoes, a mask, gloves and other protective items, as appropriate.

ate. Take particular precautions when generating metal

debris, when striking metal objects with a hammer or when cleaning components with compressed air.

Also make sure there are no persons near the machine.

For driving the pins, refer to Section "3.20 Replacing the bucket without the quick coupler" on page 193.

For cleaning the fuel, oil and air filter elements, refer to Section "8.2 Nonperiodic services" on page 278. Alcohol

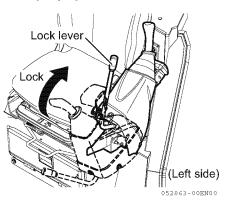
• Never operate the machine after consuming alcoholic beverages, or while you are under the influence of alcohol or if you feel ill or unwell, as that could result in accidental bodily injury to yourself or others.

Avoid unauthorized modifications

- Modifications not recommended by YANMAR may cause safety hazards.
- When you wish to modify your machine, contact your dealer. The implementation of unauthorized modifications or the use of unauthorized attachments could result in bodily injury. Since those actions would also violate the terms of YANMAR's Warranty, it would be voided.

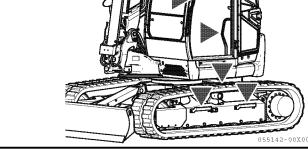
Always lock up your machine when leaving the operator's seat

- When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place the lock lever in the lock position, to prevent accidental machine movement which could result in bodily injury.
- When you leave the machine:
 - (1) Lower the bucket to the ground.
 - (2) Place the lock lever in the lock position.
 - (3) Stop the engine.
 - (4) Set all the locks in to the lock position.
 - (5) Be sure to take the starter switch key out of the starter switch.
- Be sure to store the key in a designated place so that unauthorized personnel cannot operate the machine.
 For information on parking the machine, refer to Section "3.14 Parking the machine" on page 183.



Use handrails and steps when getting on and off

- Do not jump on or off the machine. Never get on or off a machine in motion as it may result in bodily injury.
- When getting on and off the machine, face the machine and use the handrails and steps.
- Do not grab the control levers or the front windshield opening and closing knobs when getting on and off the machine.
- Make sure that you maintain three point contact with the handrails or the steps.
- If the handrails and the steps are soiled with oil or dirt, clean them off immediately.
- Repair any damaged parts and retighten any loose bolts.
- When opening or closing the cabin side door from the outside, do not do so standing on the part of the machine; for example, on the crawler or the step. Be sure to open or close the door standing on the ground.



Keep fuel and oil away from sources of ignition

• Open flames can ignite fuel, oil, hydraulic oil or antifreeze solutions, which are flammable and dangerous.

Special attention must be paid to the following matters:

- Keep flammable materials away from lighted cigarettes or matches, or any other sources of ignition.
- Never refuel while the engine is running. Smoking during refueling must be strictly prohibited.
- Firmly tighten the caps on the fuel and oil tanks.
- Store fuel and oil in a cool and well-ventilated place where they are not subjected to direct sunlight.
- Fuel and oil must be stored in a place which meets all applicable safety regulations. Unauthorized persons should not be allowed entry.



Avoid removing filler caps while temperatures are high

• The engine coolant, engine oil and hydraulic oil are hot and under pressure immediately after the machine stops operation.

Removing caps, draining coolant or oil, or replacing a filter at such a time may cause burns. Allow temperatures to cool down and follow the procedures in this manual.

- When removing the radiator cap, stop the engine and allow the coolant to cool down, then turn the cap slowly to relieve all pressure.
- Before removing the cap from the hydraulic oil tank, stop the engine and turn the cap slowly to relieve all pressure to prevent oil from spouting out.



Avoid harmful asbestos dust

- Air containing asbestos dust is carcinogenic and is hazardous to humans. Inhalation of the air may cause lung cancer. When handling materials that may contain asbestos, keep in mind that:
 - Compressed air must not be used for cleaning.
 - Water must be used to clean the machine to prevent asbestos from scattering in the air.
 - You must work on the windward side when operating the machine in a place where there may be asbestos dust.
- You should wear an appropriate respirator as necessary



• Keep hands, arms and all other parts of your body away from all the moving parts, particularly between the implements and the machine and between the hydraulic cylinder and the implements, as pinch points are created in those areas.







Keep a fire extinguisher and first aid kit handy

- The workplace must be provided with a fire extinguisher. Read instructions on the label to familiarize yourself with how to use it.
- Keep a first aid kit in a prescribed place.
- Advice what to do in the event of a fire or an accident.
- Indicate who to contact in an emergency and keep emergency telephone numbers in a prominent place.



Precautions for installing optional parts and attachments

- When installing or using optional attachments, read the operating instructions for the attachments and the Manual Sections relating to the installation of attachments.
- Use only attachments authorized by YANMAR. The use of unauthorized attachments may affect not only the safety of the machine but also the proper operation and life of the machine.
- The use of unauthorized attachments would also violate the terms of YANMAR's Warranty, so that it would be voided.

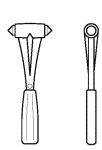
Caution for broken cabin glass

• If the glass in a cabin window should be broken by accident, the jagged edges pose a danger to the operator.

Immediately stop working and remove the broken glass, and replace it as soon as possible.

Emergency escape from operator's cab

- If the door of the cabin should not open, break the window glass with a hammer which is provided inside the cabin to escape from the operator's cab in an emergency.
- Remove the broken pieces of the window glass from the window frame to prevent any injury by those broken pieces. Besides, watch your step not





Hammer

to slip on the broken pieces of the window glass which dropped around your feet. For instructions on how to escape, refer to Section "2.10 Hammer for emergency escape from operator's cab" on page 130.

Keep the engine room clean

• Combustibles such as dry leaves, waste paper and wood chips accumulated as well as oil and fuel adhering to the surfaces of the engine room and around the battery present a risk of fire. Remove all combustibles.

Never start the engine while the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag is attached

• Never start the engine or operate the machine with the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag attached to any of its control levers, for example, until the tag is removed by the person who attached it or personnel who have completed the servicing.

Never use the machine without carrying out necessary repairs or maintenance

• Use of an unserviced machine presents the risk of unforeseen accidents or failures. Never use the machine without carrying out necessary repairs or maintenance. Necessary repairs and maintenance must be carried out as soon as possible.

42 2.Operating Precautions 🛦 WARNING These instructions should be strictly followed for the safety of you, others and your machine.

2. Operating Precautions

2.1 Precautions before starting the engine

Ensure the safety of your workplace

- Before starting the machine, check to see if there are any hazards in your working area.
- Examine the terrain and soil, and decide the best way to do the work.
- When working on the street, provide a signal person or fence for the safety of vehicles and pedestrians.
- If there are underground utilities at the work site, such as water pipes, gas pipes, high-voltage conduits or others, contact the responsible companies to locate them exactly, so as not to damage them.
- Before operating the machine in water, or crossing a creek, confirm the condition of the submerged ground, the water depth and the water flow speed, and make sure that the depth is within the allowable level.

For allowable water depth, refer to Section "3.10 Precautions for working" on page 177.



• Wood chips, dead leaves, trash and other flammable materials in proximity to the engine are hazardous as they may cause fire.

Always check and keep your machine clear of these flammable materials.

- Check for any leaks from fuel, lube oil or hydraulic oil lines. Repair faults and clean spilled oil as necessary.
 For additional information, refer to Section "3.1 Checking before starting the engine" on page 143.
- Check to see where fire extinguishers are located and know how to use them.



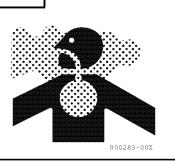
03638-008

Inspect around the operator's seat

- Dirt, oil and snow on the floor, levers, handrails or steps are slippery and hazardous. Remove them all completely.
- Keep parts and tools away from the operator's seat as they may damage the control levers or switches or create other hazards.

Provide adequate ventilation when working in an enclosed area

Engine exhaust fumes are harmful to the human body and their inhalation is extremely hazardous. When starting the engine in an enclosed area, open the windows and doors for ventilation. Also do not idle the engine unnecessarily or leave the engine running while the machine is not in use.



Keep the cabin window clean

- Keep the surface of the cabin windows and the headlights clean for clear view.
- Make sure that your machine is equipped with headlights and all required working lamps, and that they all work properly.

Fasten the seatbelt

- For your safety, ROPS (Roll-Over Protective Structure)/OPG (Operator Protective Guards) and a seatbelt have been provided.
- Always fasten the seatbelt across the pelvic region and adjust it snugly before you operate the machine.
- The seatbelt must be replaced if the machine is involved in an accident.
- In addition, the seat and the seat mounting must also be checked by your dealer after an accident has occurred.
- If the seat and the seat mounting are damaged, they must be replaced immediately.

ROPS/OPG

- Never modify a structural member of the ROPS/OPG.
- If the ROPS/OPG is damaged, replace it immediately to prevent bodily injury.
 - Never repair or modify it. Ask your dealer for replacing it.

Caution for the protection of plants from hot wind and exhaust gases

The wind and exhaust gases from the radiator and the muffler respectively are very hot. Plants directly exposed to hot wind or exhaust gases may die.

Erect a barrier to protect plants from hot wind and exhaust gases when working near them.

2.2 Precautions for starting the engine, working and parking

Signal before starting the engine

- Check the machine carefully before initial start up for the day.
- Make sure there are no persons near the machine before getting on it.
- Never start the engine when the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag is attached to the control system.
- Sound the horn to alert people nearby before starting the engine.
- Be sure to start the engine and operate the machine from the operator's seat only.
- Do not allow any other persons to get on the machine.

Inspections to be performed after starting the engine

Do not operate the machine before performing specified inspections after engine start up. Neglecting performance of such inspections can lead to failure to find abnormalities in the machine at an early stage, resulting in the risk of personal injury or damage to the machine.

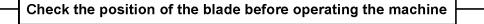
For details of inspection procedures, refer to Section "**3.3 Operating and checking instruc**tions after starting the engine" on page 162.

When an abnormality is detected in the machine

If an abnormality is detected during operation, immediately stop and inspect the machine and take necessary corrective measures.

Measures to be taken in case of fire

- Turn the starter switch to the OFF position to stop the engine in the event of a fire.
- Use the handrails and steps when getting out of the machine. Do not jump down from the machine. Doing so may result in falls and injuries.



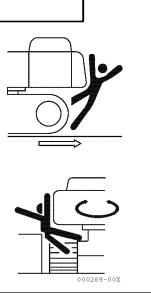
 Check the position of the blade before operating the travel levers. When the blade is located in the back, the operation of the travel levers is reversed.
 For instructions on How the machine travels, refer to Section "3.4 Traveling" on page 165.

Traveling in reverse

Blade

Make sure there are no persons nearby when turning or reversing the machine

- A signal person should be provided for safety when the work site is hazardous or when visibility is poor.
- Keep all other persons away from the work site or the traveling path of the machine.
- Alert persons nearby with a horn or other signal before starting the machine.
- The machine permits a limited range of vision toward the rear. Make sure there are no persons behind the machine before reversing.



Take measures to prevent the machine from getting stuck before working on soft ground

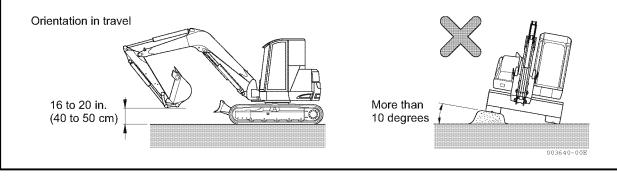
Working on soft ground or in swamps presents the risk of the machine becoming stuck in mud, resulting in possible immobilization.

Place logs, pieces of lumber or other appropriate bases horizontally on the surface of the soft ground or the swamp to prevent the machine from getting stuck.

Be careful when the ground is frozen because it becomes softer as the temperature rises.

Precautions for traveling

- When traveling with the machine, keep the bucket 16 to 20 in. (40 to 50 cm) above the ground with boom and arm folded as illustrated below.
- If you need to operate the control levers while traveling, never move them abruptly.
- Travel the machine at a low speed and slow down when turning on rough terrain.
- Avoid running over obstacles if possible. If unavoidable, run the machine at a low speed while keeping the implement close to the ground. Never run over obstacles that may cause the machine to tilt more than 10 degrees.

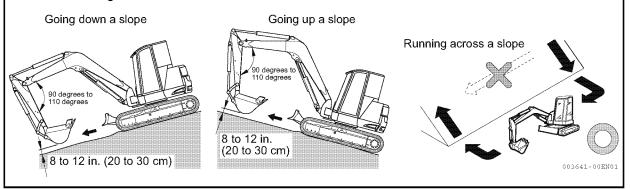


Running the machine on a slope

- Run the machine carefully on a slope to avoid overturning or skidding sidewards.
- When running the machine on a slope, keep the bucket 8 to 12 in. (20 to 30 cm) above the ground so that you can immediately lower it to the ground and stop the machine in an emergency.
- Never turn the machine on a slope or run it across the slope. Move down to flat ground and then make a turn.

For instructions on how to run the machine on a slope, refer to Section "3.11 Precautions for going up and down a slope" on page 178.

• On grasses, dead leaves or a wet metal plate, even with a slight gradient, the machine will easily slip. Under those circumstances, run the machine carefully at low speed to prevent it from skidding.

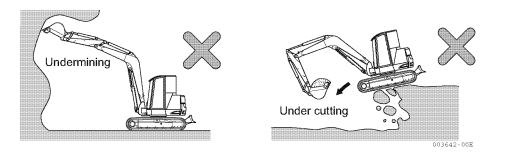


Level the ground of the work site and the area within which the machine travels

Rough ground can cause machine instability, resulting in increased vibration leading to accidents due to operational errors or damage to the machine caused by exposure to shock. Level the ground of the work site and the area within which the machine travels before working with the machine. Alternatively, avoid obstacles when operating the machine in the work area.

Avoid hazardous work

- Undermining a cliff is dangerous as it may cause a rockslide or landslide.
- Undercutting the machine is dangerous as it may cause a cave-in, resulting in the machine overturning and falling into the excavation.



DANGER

Keep away from electric power lines

- Working in the vicinity of overhead electric power lines presents a very serious hazard and special precautions must be taken. For purposes of this manual you are considered to be working in the vicinity of overhead power lines when the attachment or load of your excavator, in any position, can reach to within the minimum safe distances shown below.
- The following procedures are effective in preventing accidents or injuries.
 - 1) Wear shoes with rubber or leather soles.
 - 2) Use a signal person to warn the operator when the machine is getting too close to a power line.
- If the machine should contact a wire, the operator must not leave the operator's seat.
- When working near power lines, caution all ground personnel to stand clear of the machine.
- To determine the transmission voltage at the working site, contact the electric utility concerned.

	Transmission voltage (V)	Minimum safe distance [ft. (m)]				
Power	100/200 or less	7 (2) or more				
distribution	6600 or less	7 (2) or more				
	22000 or less	10 (3) or more				
Transmission	66000 or less	13.5 (4) or more				
line	154000 or less	16.5 (5) or more				
	275000 or less	23 (7) or more				



Prevent bumping the implements

• When traveling through tunnels or under bridges, or working at a site near other overhead obstacles, operate the machine carefully so as not to bump the boom, arm or the implement against those overhead obstacles.

Do not move the bucket over workers or the dump truck cabin

Do not move the bucket over workers or the dump truck cabin. Doing so may expose workers to risks such as falling loads including soil in the bucket or impact with the bucket, resulting in personal injury or damage to the machine.

Do not put the feet or hands under the bucket

Do not put the feet or hands under working devices such as the bucket and attachments. Doing so may result in limbs or appendages becoming trapped. Work only where visibility as good

- When working in a dark place, light up the area with the work lights and head lights, and prepare extra lighting equipment as necessary.
- · Stop working when fog, snow or rain impedes your view.

Work carefully in a snow-covered areas

- Snow-covered ground and icy roads are dangerous as they may cause the machine to skid even on a slight slope. Run the machine at low speed, and never start, stop or turn abruptly on such ground or under such road conditions.
- Be careful removing snow as road shoulders or other hazards may be buried under snow.

Traveling on narrow roads

Traveling on narrow roads may cause the machine to collide with other objects or topple. Check the external dimensions of the machine and the road width before driving the machine on narrow roads. When traveling on roads that present the risk of the machine hitting other objects or the shoulders collapsing, reinforcing or other appropriate measures should be taken and guides should be deployed to ensure safe travel of the machine.

Unstable ground creates a high possibility of overturn

- Keep away from cliffs, road shoulders or trenches if possible as the ground near them is unstable. The ground may crumble due to the weight or vibrations of the machine, resulting in an overturn or fall of the machine. Be particularly careful when working immediately after a rainstorm or after blasting as the ground may be unstable.
- Ground-fills or ground near a ditch may be unstable and may crumble due to the weight or vibrations of the machine, causing the machine to tilt. Much caution must be taken in working in these areas.
- When working in an area where there is a high possibility of falling rocks, wear a hard-hat and stay under the canopy.

Using the quick coupler

- Observe the procedures of mounting and dismounting the bucket.
- Always securely and correctly install the lock pin when the bucket is mounted on the quick coupler.
- Replace the lock pin whenever it is damaged or lost.

For information of handling the quick coupler, refer to Section "3.11 Precautions for going up and down a slope" on page 178.

Working on a slope

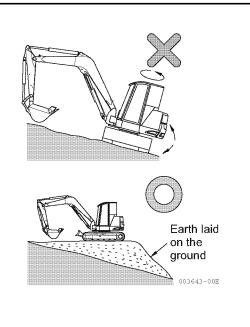
- Be aware that the machine may tip over when swinging the upperstructure or swinging the implement on a slope.
- Never swing the upperstructure toward the downward side of the slope with earth loaded in the bucket.

(See the illustration at upper right.)

• If swinging is unavoidable, level off a work area to maintain the machine as horizontal as possible, then swing.

(See the illustration at lower right.)

For levelling off a work area, refer to Section "3.11 Precautions for going up and down a slope" on page 178.



Parking the machine

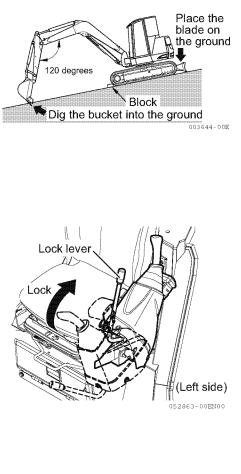
- Park on level ground. If parking on a slope is unavoidable, block the tracks with solid pieces of wood and dig the bucket into the ground. (See the illustration at right.)
- If necessary to park the machine on the side of a road, set up a warning flag, fence, or lamp that can be easily recognized by passing cars and pedestrians but does not impede them.

For parking procedures, refer to Section "3.14 Parking the machine" on page 183.

- When leaving the operator's seat, do the following:
 - (1) Be sure to place the bucket on the ground.
 - (2) Set the lock lever to the lock position.
 - (3) Stop the engine.
 - (4) Set all the locks to the lock position.

(5) Be sure to take the starter switch key out of the starter switch.

 For information about parking procedures, refer to Section "3.14 Parking the machine" on page 183.
 For information about the parts to be locked, refer to Section "3.18 Locking" on page 186.

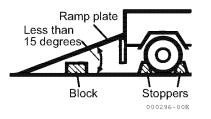


2.3 Precautions for transportation

Precautions for loading and unloading the machine

- Be careful in loading and unloading the machine, because it is a job of high hazard potential.
- Load or unload the machine at a low engine speed, and low travel speed.
- Load or unload the machine on the level, solid ground away from the shoulder of the road.
- Use ramp plates of adequate strength with hooks on their ends.

Check to see that the ramp plates are wide, long, and thick enough to sustain the load so that you can load or unload the machine safely. Support the ramp plates with blocks, to provide additional strength.



- Securely hook the ramp plates to the deck of the truck so that they will not come off.
- Remove grease, oil, and other slippery deposits from the ramp plates, and remove mud from the tracks to prevent the machine from skidding on the ramp plates.
- Do not load or unload the machine if the ramp plates are slippery because of rain, snow or ice.
- Never change travel direction while on the ramp plates. If you need to change travel direction, go down the ramp plates, and change direction on the ground.
- After loading the machine, block it with lumber and secure the machine with a chain or a wire rope so that the machine will not move during transit.

For instructions on loading and unloading the machine, refer to Section "4. Transportation" on page 230.

For instructions on securing the machine, refer to Section "4. Transportation" on page 230.

Precautions for transporting

- Transport the machine safely in accordance with local regulations and applicable law.
- Select a travel route consistent with the width, height and weight of the machine loaded on the truck.

2.4 Precautions for the battery

A DANGER

Be careful in handling the battery

- The battery electrolyte contains dilute sulfuric acid, which can severely burn the eyes or skin. Always wear safety goggles and protective clothing when servicing the battery. If contact with the eyes or skin should occur, flush with a large amount of water and obtain prompt medical treatment.
- Because flammable hydrogen gas is produced by the battery, ignition and explosion may occur. Keep flames and sparks away from the battery.
- Do not use or charge the battery if the battery electrolyte level is below the lower limit. Doing so may cause the battery to explode. Always check the battery electrolyte level before starting the engine. If the electrolyte level is low, add distilled water to the upper limit.
- If you swallow battery electrolyte by mistake, drink a large amount of water, milk, or fresh eggs, and obtain medical treatment immediately.
- Before checking or handling the battery, be sure to stop the engine and turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position. Never disconnect the battery cable during engine operation.
- Be careful not to cause a short circuit by placing a tool across the terminals of the battery.
- If a terminal connection is loose, sparks may be generated due to contact failure, causing possible ignition and explosion. Be sure to connect the terminals securely.
- Do not use the machine with the battery which is short of battery electrolyte. The shortage of battery electrolyte not only will reduce the life of the battery but also could cause an explosion.







WARNING

Observe the procedures for starting the engine using booster cables

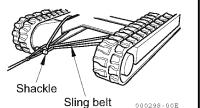
- When you start the engine using booster cables, wear safety goggles.
- If you start the engine by taking electric power from another machine, do not allow your machine to contact the other machine.
- To connect the booster cables, begin with the positive terminal, and to disconnect them, begin with the negative terminal (ground side).
- If a tool simultaneously touches the positive terminal and the machine, potentially hazardous sparks may be generated.
- Do not connect the booster cables to the terminals in reverse polarity. In other words, never connect the negative terminal on one machine to the positive terminal on the other machine.
- As the last step, connect the negative booster cable terminal to the upper structure frame. At that time, sparks will be generated. Consequently, connect the terminal to a point as far away from the battery as possible.

For information about starting the engine using booster cables, refer to Section "7.3 If the battery is overdischarged" on page 243.

2.5 Precautions for towing

Hook the wire rope on the frame when towing

- Improper towing procedures can cause death or serious injury.
- When towing a machine with another machine, use a wire rope strong enough to sustain the machine weight.
- Never tow a machine on a slope.
- Do not use a towing rope that is kinked, distorted or damaged.
- Do not ride on the towing cable or on the wire rope.
- When connecting an object to be towed, make sure that no person enters the space between the machine and the object.



- To connect an object to be towed, hook the sling belt as illustrated at right.
- The hook provided on the machine is intended for stabilizing the machine during transporting. Never use it for towing.
 For information about towing the machine, refer to Section "7.2 Towing" on page 242.

2.6 Precautions for engines and exhaust gas treatment equipment

A DANGER

High Pressure Hazard

- The engine of this machine uses a high pressure common rail system. For disassembly of the high pressure parts (e.g. the high pressure pipe) in particular, be sure to wait approximately 10 to 15 minutes before performing disassembly.
- Do not loosen the high pressure pipe while the engine is running, even in low idle. This is dangerous because fuel under high pressure will blow out.



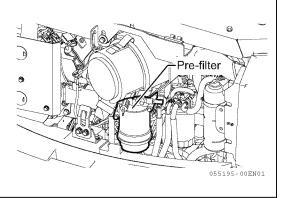
· Failure to comply will result in death or serious injury.

Precautions for disassembling

The engine of this machine uses a high pressure common rail system. The fuel is injected at extremely high pressure. Never disassemble the fuel system parts. Failure to comply may result in death or serious injury. If a malfunction occurs, contact your nearest YANMAR dealer or distributor.

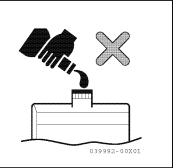
Daily inspection of pre-filter

Water in the pre-filter must be checked every day without fail. The fuel system of the common rail engine is under extremely high pressure. Mixture of water with fuel fed to the supply pump may cause seizure of components such as the supply pump and injector. For details of pre-filter inspections, refer to Section **"3.1 Checking before starting the** engine" on page 143.



Prohibition of Use of Fuel Additives

Fuel specified by YANMAR must be used as it is without substances such as fuel additives. They may cause clogging of the fuel injection nozzle, resulting in reduced engine output.



Precautions for fuel storage containers

The engine of this machine is furnished with precision fuel injection components to ensure compliance with exhaust emission regulations. For fuel storage, the use of galvanized steel containers should be avoided and containers made of materials such as plastic or stainless steel used. Dissolution of zinc or lead in fuel may result in poor engine condition.

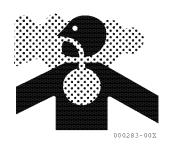
Precautions for Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

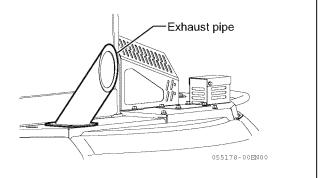
This machine is mounted with a diesel particulate filter (DPF). For details of usage, refer to Section **"3.26 Handling diesel particulate filter (DPF)" on page 220**.

- DPF regeneration should be carried out in a well-ventilated, spacious outdoor location. Because exhaust gas contains colorless, odorless harmful carbon monoxide (CO), inhalation of exhaust gas is dangerous and may cause carbon monoxide poisoning.
- During DPF regeneration, the temperature around the exhaust pipe and muffler and the exhaust gas temperature increase with cases where the exhaust gas temperature may reach almost 600°C. Care must be taken to ensure that there are no persons or flammable objects in the vicinity of the exhaust.
- If DPF manual regeneration is to be performed, the machine must be parked in a location where there are no flammable objects.

The following must be observed to ensure DPF performance.

- DPF maintenance must be carried out properly in accordance with the prescribed periodic inspection interval. Contact your nearest dealer or distributor when maintenance is to be performed. For details of the periodic inspection interval, refer to Section **"7. Maintenance Table" on page 272.**
- The sulfur content must not exceed 15 ppm by volume. A higher sulfur content fuel may cause sulfuric acid corrosion in the cylinders of the engines. Especially U.S.A. and Canada, Ultra Low Sulfur fuel must be used. For details of fuel and lubricants used, refer to "3.3 Conditions to be met to assure compliance with EPA emission standards" on page 4.





3. Precautions for Servicing

3.1 **Precautions before servicing**

Attach the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag to an implement control lever

• If another person should start the engine or operate the control levers while service is in progress, the service personnel can sustain serious bodily injury.

Attach the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag indicating "Servicing in Progress" to one of the implement control levers.

The "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag is enclosed with the Operation Manual. Article number : 172437-03252



When carrying out work involving multiple workers, follow the instructions given by the leader

Misunderstandings in communication between workers during work carried out by multiple personnel may lead to unforeseen accidents.

To avoid such risks, a leader should be designated when carrying out repairs to the machine or installing or removing working devices and other workers in the team should follow instructions given by the leader.

Provide adequate ventilation

- Maintenance work performed indoors or in places with poor ventilation presents the risk of gas poisoning. Ensure adequate ventilation especially when running the engine or handling fuel, washing oil and paint.
- Ensure adequate ventilation when carrying out maintenance work or operating the machine indoors. Extend the exhaust pipe to the outside of the building and open doors and windows to let in adequate amounts of outdoor air. Install ventilation fans as required.

Perform inspections and servicing on a level surface

- The performance of inspections and servicing with the machine parked on a slope may make it difficult to properly determine the condition of the machine. In addition, the machine may shift under its own weight on a slope, presenting the risk of personnel becoming trapped in the machine or other accidents.
- Perform machine inspections and servicing on a safe, hard, level surface. Rest implements including the bucket on the ground. Stop the engine and remove the starter switch key. Put wooden blocks under the tracks.

Use appropriate tools

 Using damaged or worn tools or using tools inappropriate for the required application is very dangerous, and may also cause damage to the machine. Make sure to use the tools that are appropriate for the specific job.
 For information about tools, refer to Section "5.1 Required tools" on page 268.



Keep the work area well-organized

- Performing inspections and servicing in a cluttered work area can cause workers to stumble, fall or sustain injuries caused by detritus or other obstacles.
- Remove all obstacles in the work area and clear the area of all grease, oil, paint and detritus to ensure safety.

Periodically replace the parts essential to safety

- Aging or damage to the parts listed below can cause a fire. Make sure that they are replaced periodically.
 - Fuel system : Fuel hose and fuel tube cap
 - Hydraulic system : Outlet hose of main pump
- The parts listed above must be replaced periodically even if no abnormality is found in them.

(They age with time.)

• If any abnormality is found in them, replace or repair the parts even though the suggested replacement time has not been reached.

For information about replacing essential safety parts, refer to Section "6. Replacing Essential Parts Periodically" on page 270.

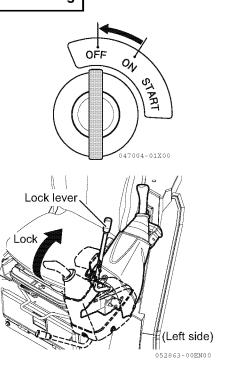


- Be sure to stop the engine before performing inspection and servicing.
- If necessary to perform service while running the engine, as when cleaning the inside of the radiator, be sure to set the lock lever to the lock position and do the job together with a partner.

(One should take the operator's seat so that he or she can stop the engine at any time.)

That person must be careful not to touch any levers in the cabin.

• Be extremely careful not to contact the moving fan or fan or fan belt, or any hot surfaces.



3.2 Precautions during servicing

Keep unauthorized persons away

• Never admit any persons into the work area who are not taking part in the work. Be conscious of the safety of other persons.

Be especially careful when grinding, welding, or using a large hammer.

Removed attachments

• When an attachment is placed on the ground or against a wall after removing it or prior to reinstalling it, be sure that it is stable to prevent it from falling down.

Working under the machine

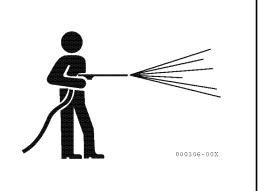
- Before performing service or repairs underneath the machine, place the implement on the ground in its lowest position.
- Be sure to apply blocks to the tracks to lock the tracks securely.
- Never perform service underneath the machine if it is not completely stable.

Support the implement

Replacement or repair of joints or hoses with the implement raised above the ground presents the risk of the implement descending. Always lower the implement to the ground or support it with safety props or wooden blocks. Never work under the implement unless it is securely supported.

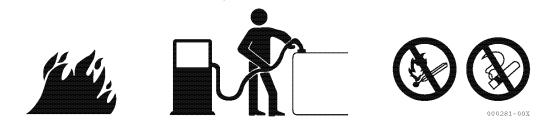
Keep the machine clean

- Spilled oil or grease, or scattered parts are dangerous and can cause falls. Keep the machine clean.
- Getting water into the electrical system may cause it to malfunction, resulting in faulty operation of the machine. Also it may permit electrical leaks that could cause a fire or electric shocks.
- Never clean the sensors, connectors or the operator's seat with water or steam.



Precautions for fueling and oiling

- Spilled fuel and oil could cause a fire and they are dangerously slippery. Wipe up spills immediately.
- Close the fuel cap and oil cap securely.
- Never use fuel for cleaning.
- Provide good ventilation when replenishing fuel or oil.
- Extinguish fires that may cause fuel or oil to ignite.
- · Do not smoke during refilling, inspection or servicing.
- Use non-flammable oil to clean components.



Radiator cooling water level

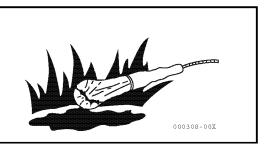
- Before checking the radiator cooling water level, stop the engine and wait until the engine and the radiator have cooled down.
- Slowly loosen the cap to release the inner pressure before removing the cap.



Use an explosion-proof lighting source

• Use an explosion-proof lighting source when checking the fuel, the oil, the cooling water, or the battery electrolyte.

Failure to use a explosion-proof lighting source may cause ignition to occur, inducing an explosion.



Precautions for handling battery

• When welding or repairing the electrical system, disconnect the negative terminal of the battery to interrupt the electric circuit.



Handling high-pressure hoses

- · Leaks of fuel and oil could cause a fire.
- Do not bend a high-pressure hose forcibly, or strike it with a hard object. Because abnormally bent or damaged piping, tubes, and hoses easily burst under high pressure, never use them.

Be careful of hot oil under high-pressure

- The hydraulic system for the implement operates under high pressure. When replenishing or draining hydraulic oil, be sure to first relieve the high pressure.
- The emission of hot oil under high-pressure from a small leak could result in serious bodily injury. Wear safety goggles and thick gloves when checking for leaks. Use a piece of cardboard or a plywood block to detect emissions of hot oil.

If the hot oil should contact your body, obtain prompt medical treatment.





Be careful when servicing systems under high temperature and high pressure

• The engine cooling water and each lube oil system are still under high temperature and pressure immediately after the engine has stopped. Removing caps, draining oil and water, or replacing filter elements at that time may cause a burn. Wait until the temperature drops, then begin servicing in accordance with the procedures described in this manual.

For cleaning the inside of the cooling system, refer to Section " Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" on page 318.

For checking the level of the cooling water and the hydraulic oil, refer to Section "8.3 Checking before start-up" on page 297.

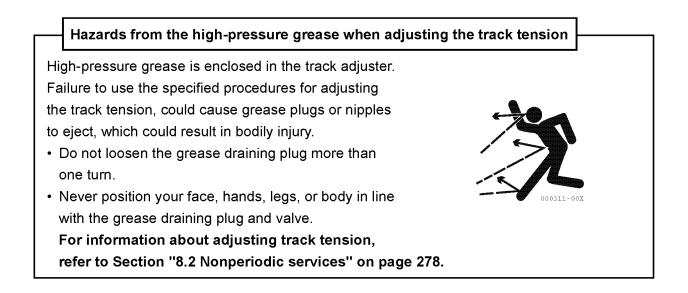
For checking the oil levels in various systems and replenishing the oil, refer to Section "8.3 to 8.5 Periodic services". For replacing the oils in various systems and replacing the filter elements, refer to Section "8.6 to 8.8 Periodic services".



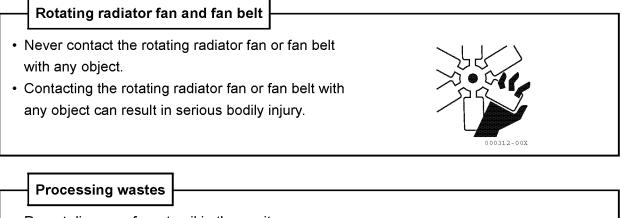
Lock the inspection cover

Carrying out servicing with the inspection cover open presents the risk of personnel sustaining injuries caused by sudden closure of the cover due, for example, to strong gusts of wind. Be sure to lock the inspection cover securely with the cover lock.

After completion of inspection or servicing, always put the inspection cover back in place.



64 3. Precautions for Servicing 🛦 WARNING These instructions should be strictly followed for the safety of you, others and your machine.



- Do not dispose of waste oil in the sanitary sewer system.
- Always drain the oil from the machine into a secure container, and never directly to the ground.
- When disposing of toxic wastes such as fuel, oil, cooling water, solvent, filters, and spent batteries, comply with all applicable disposal regulation.



- Never touch the air conditioning refrigerant as it may cause frostbite if it comes in contact with the skin or blindness if it gets into the eyes.
- Since it is a global warming substance, care must be taken to avoid the release of the refrigerant (HFC R134a) into the atmosphere when handling.

Handling the accumulator and gas spring

High-pressure nitrogen gas is contained in the accumulator and gas spring. Mistakes in handling these parts present the risk of rupturing, resulting in serious bodily injury. The instructions below must be followed:

- Do not disassemble these parts.
- Keep these parts away from fire. Do not throw them into the fire.
- Do not drill a hole in these parts or weld or cut them.
- Contact the nearest dealer when it becomes necessary to dispose of these parts since any remaining gas must be removed before disposal.

When an abnormality is found during inspection

Continued operation without eliminating any abnormalities discovered may exacerbate said abnormalities or result in accidents.

Immediately investigate causes and make necessary adjustments and repairs to prevent failures.

Contact the nearest dealer in the event of machine failure

Attempts by users to make difficult repairs to the machine may lead to unforeseen failures or accidents. In the event that such repairs become necessary, contact the nearest dealer for service in accordance with the instructions set forth in the operation manual.

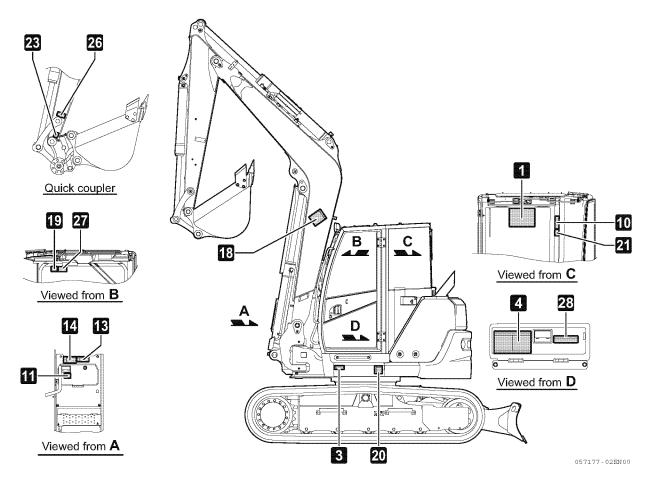
4. Safety Messages (Warning Labels)

There are a number of Warning Labels on the machine. Full descriptions of all Warning Labels and their locations are reviewed in this section. Periodically confirm whether all Warning Labels are still mounted in their correct locations and can be easily read.

If a warning label is missing, damaged or cannot be read, it must be promptly replaced. Also, if a warning label was mounted on a part which is replaced, a new warning label must be installed on the replaced part.

Contact your dealer to obtain new labels. The part code number is shown on each warning label as well as on the reproductions in this manual.

4.1 Location of warning labels

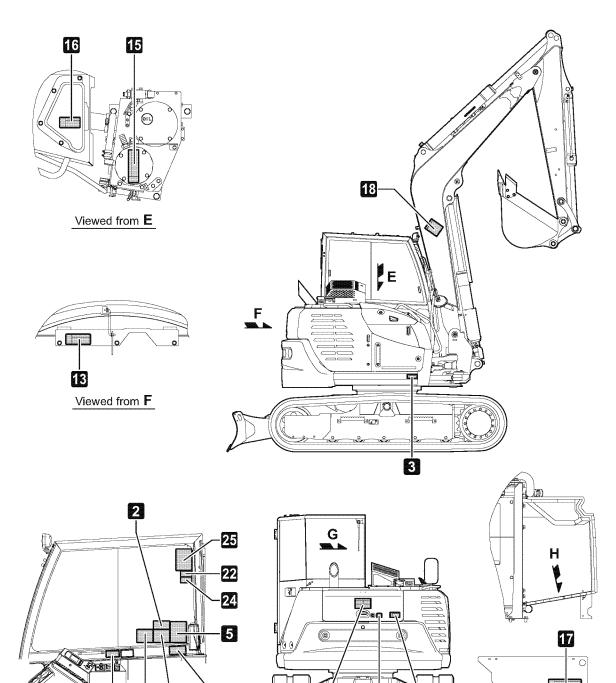


9

8

Viewed from G

6 7



12

Ó

14

Viewed from H

057178-00EN00

1 172B12-03382

AWARNING												
TIP-OVER HAZARD! Never allow total lifting weight to exceed excavator lift capacity. r MODEL SV100-2 EXCAVATOR h L												
LIFT POINT HEIGHT	(r) LIFT RADIUS - in. (mm) (r) LIF					LIFT RAD	r RADIUS · in. (mm) (r) LIFT RADIUS · in. (mm)					m)
hin. (mm)	RATED LIFT CAPACITY OVER END BLADE DOWN · Ibs. (kg)				RATED LIFT CAPACITY OVER END BLADE UP • lbs. (kg)				RATED LIFT CAPACITY OVER SIDE BLADE UP · lbs. (kg)			
	MAX	196.9 (5000)	157.1 (4000)	118.1 (3000)	MAX	196.9 (5000)	157.1 (4000)	118.1 (3000)	MAX	196.9 (5000)	157.1 (4000)	118.1 (3000)
196.9 (5000)	※4145 (1880)			·····	※4145 (1880)				3351 (1520)	//////////_		
157.5 (4000)	(1900)	※4013 (1820)	※4079 (1850)		3285 (1490)	¥4013 (1820)	※4079 (1850)		2756 (1250)	×4013 (1820)	¥4145 (1880)	
118.1 (3000)	※4167 (1890)	※4145 (1880)	※4740 (2150)		2844 (1290)	¥4145 (1880)	×4740 (2150)		2381 (1080)	3351 (1520)	¥4740 (2150)	
78.7 (2000)	※4189 (1900)	(2190)	※5710 (2590)		2690 (1220)	3814 (1730)	※5710 (2590)		2227 (1010)	3109 (1410)	4454 (2020)	
39.4 (1000)	%4387 (1990)	* 5247 (2380)	¥7056 (3200)	**10231 (4640)	2800 (1270)	3660 (1660)	5203 (2360)	7585 (3440)	2182 (990)	3020 (1370)	4299 (1950)	6019 (2730)
Ground (0)	¥4321 (1960)	*5733 (2600)	¥7320 (3320)	¥10275 (4660)	2888 (1310)	3616 (1640)	4939 (2240)	7452 (3380)	2381 (1080)	2954 (1340)	4079 (1850)	6019 (2730)
-39.4 (-1000)	¥4387 (1990)	※5446 (2470)	¥7100 (3220)	× 9657 (4380)	3087 (1400)	3572 (1620)	4851 (2200)	7541 (3420)	2491 (1130)	2932 (1330)	3924 (1780)	5931 (2690)
-78.7 (-2000)	¥4277 (1940)		₩6107 (2770)	× 8445 (3830)	3638 (1650)		4917 (2230)	7276 (3300)	3109 (1410)		3991 (1810)	6085 (2760)
											Ð	0172B12-03382

2 172437-03312

AWARNING

ROLLOVER HAZARD! NEVER drive on slopes greater than 20 degrees. NEVER turn on or drive across slopes. ALWAYS drive with bucket 8 to 12 inches (20 to 30 cm) above ground. ALWAYS descend at low speed using travel levers or pedals, accelerator and brakes for control as necessary. Failure to comply could result in death or serious injury.

3 172437-03352



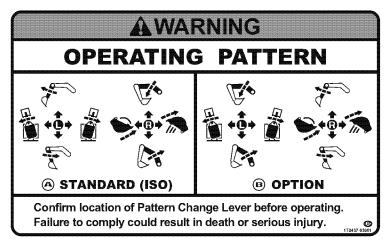
WARNING

BURN HAZARD!

BURN HAZARD! CONTENTS UNDER PRESSURE! ALWAYS relieve pressure in grease cylinder before servicing. NEVER open valve more than one turn. Failure to comply could result in death or serious injury.

172437-03352

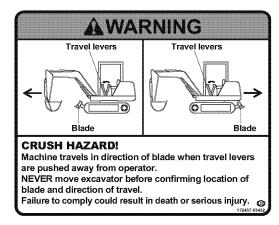
4 172437-03601



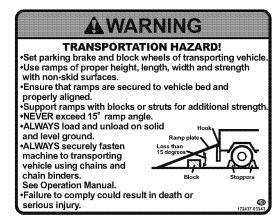
5 172437-03372

AWARNING **PROPER OPERATING PROCEDURE:** ALWAYS wear seat belt. NEVER start excavator unless all safety guards are in place and implement controls are in neutral. NEVER operate with people on or near excavator. Start from operator's seat only. NEVER start engine standing on ground. Inspect for overhead power lines, obstructions, holes and drop-offs and note location of underground utility lines before operation. NEVER leave operator's seat until all implements are grounded, hydraulic pressure is relieved for all controls, lock levers are locked and ignition key has been removed. NEVER attempt to raise chassis off ground with blade and attachment. 172437-03372

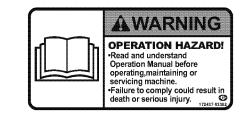
6 172437-03432



7 172437-03343



8 172437-03302



9 172437-03471



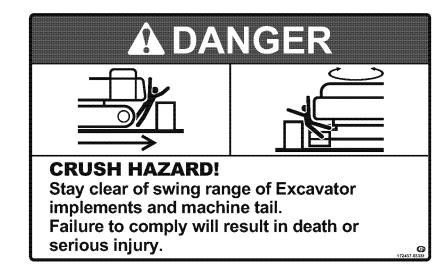
10 172437-03451



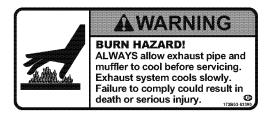
11 172437-03402



12 172437-03381



13 172B03-03390



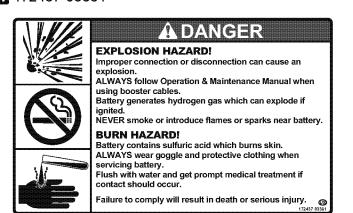
11 172A36-03411



15 172437-03322



17 172437-03361



16 172437-03391



18 172187-03941



20 172472-03141



22 172472-03241

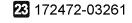


19 172437-03551



21 172437-03441



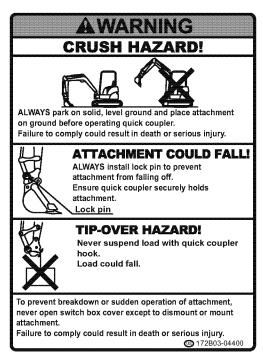




24 172B03-04410



25 172B03-04400



27 172B11-03970



28 172B03-03800



26 172472-03330



OPERATION

1.	Identification of	
	Important Parts	. 77
1.1	Overview of the machine	77
1.2	Controls and switches	78
2.	Description of	
	Control Devices	. 79
2.1	LCD Monitor	79
2.2	Switches	112
2.3	Control levers and pedals	117
2.4	Engine hood	122
2.5	Bonnet B	123
2.6	Bonnet R	124
2.7	Storage compartment for the	
	operation & maintenance manual	125
2.8	Tool storage space	125
2.9	Windshield	126
2.10	Hammer for emergency escape	
	from operator's cab	130
2.11	Operator's seat	131
2.12	Headlight	132
2.13	Ash tray	133
2.14	Right window glass	133
2.15	Cabin side door	134
2.16	Handling Air Conditioner	135
2.17	Replenishment of windshield	
	washer fluid	139
2.18	Fuse	140
2.19	External power socket	142

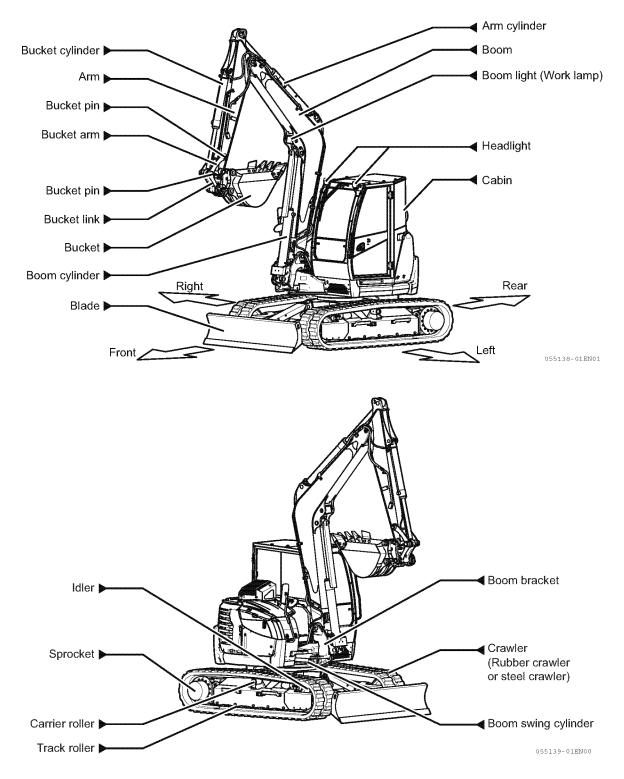
3.	Operating Instructions143
3.1	Checking before starting
	the engine 143
3.2	Starting up the engine
3.3	Operating and checking instructions
	after starting the engine 162
3.4	Traveling 165
3.5	Steering 169
3.6	Stopping the machine 171
3.7	Swinging the upperstructure 172
3.8	Operating the implement 173
3.9	Precautions for operating
	the implement 174
3.10	Precautions for working 177
3.11	Precautions for going up and
	down a slope 178
3.12	Escaping from the mud 180
3.13	Operations using the bucket 181
3.14	Parking the machine
3.15	Inspection requirements
	after completing operation
3.16	Stopping the engine
3.17	Inspection requirements
	after stopping the engine
3.18	Locking 186
3.19	Handling the rubber crawlers 187
3.20	Replacing the bucket without
	the quick coupler 193

3.21	Reversing the bucket without the	
	quick coupler	. 195
3.22	Handling quick coupler	.197
3.23	Handling hydraulic P.T.O.	.208
3.24	Handling the thumb bracket	.217
3.25	Releasing the internal pressure	
	of the hydraulic circuit	
	by accumulator	.218
3.26	Handling	
	diesel particulate filter (DPF)	. 220
3.27	Handling	
	SMARTASSIST-Remote	.228
4.	Transportation	230
4. 4.1	Transportation	230
	•	
	Loading and unloading	
4.1	Loading and unloading the machine	.230
4.1	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading	.230
4.1 4.2	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading the machine	.230 .232
4.1 4.2	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading the machine Precautions for transporting	.230 .232 .233
4.1 4.2 4.3	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading the machine Precautions for transporting the machine	.230 .232 .233
4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading the machine Precautions for transporting the machine Suspending the machine	.230 .232 .233 .233
4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4	Loading and unloading the machine Precautions for loading the machine Precautions for transporting the machine Suspending the machine Care and Service in	.230 .232 .233 .233 235

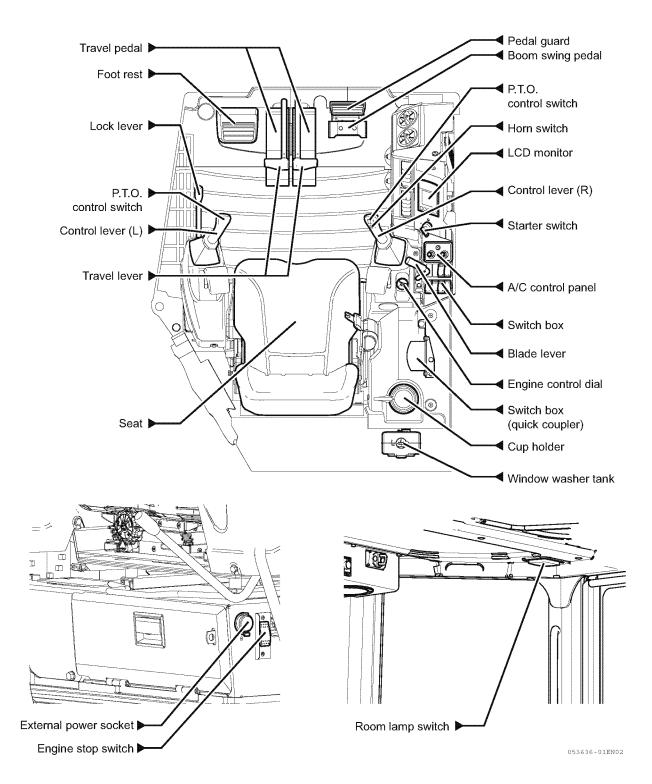
5.3	After cold weather ends 23	7
6.	Long-term Storage23	8
6.1	Before storing 23	8
6.2	Storing 24	0
6.3	Using the machine again	0
_		
7.	Troubleshooting24	1
7 .1	Phenomena that do not	1
	-	
	Phenomena that do not	1
7.1	Phenomena that do not constitute faults	1 2
7.1 7.2	Phenomena that do not constitute faults	1 2 3

1. Identification of Important Parts

1.1 Overview of the machine



1.2 Controls and switches

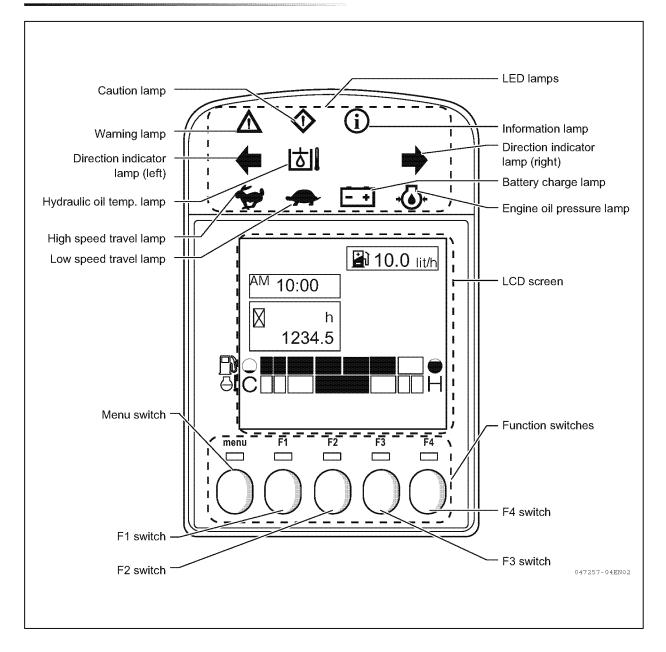


2. Description of Control Devices

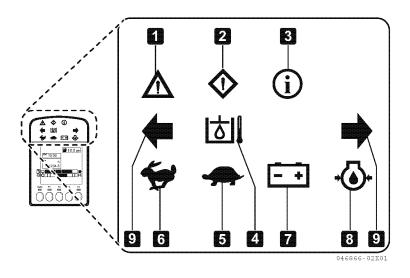
This section describes several of the control devices necessary to operate the machine. In order to ensure safety and comfort in working with the machine, it is imperative for you to fully understand how to operate and interact with these devices.

2.1 LCD Monitor

Identification of Important Parts and Function



■ LED lamps



1 Warning lamp

This lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds when operation must be stopped immediately due to machine trouble.



2 Caution lamp

This lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds when corrective measures need to be taken as soon as possible to deal with machine trouble.

1 Information lamp

This lamp flashes to indicate the existence of information that needs to be given to the operator.

4 Hydraulic oil temp. lamp

The function of this lamp is not used in this machine.

However, the lamp is illuminated for 2 seconds only when the starter switch has been turned to the "ON" position. \Diamond

(j)

<u>ک</u>

5 Low speed travel lamp

The function of this lamp is not used in this machine.

However, the lamp is illuminated for 2 seconds only when the starter switch has been turned to the "ON" position.

6 High speed travel lamp

This lamp is illuminated when the travel automatic dual speed switch turned to the "ON" position.

Battery charge lamp

This lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds when the battery is not being charged properly while the engine is running; at the same time, the caution lamp also flashes.

If this lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds, inspect the battery charge circuit and, if any problems are found, take the necessary corrective measures according to Section "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.

Engine oil pressure lamp

This lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds when the engine oil pressure falls outside the normal range; at the same time, the warning lamp also flashes.

If this lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds, immediately stop the engine and carry out inspections according to Section "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.

Direction indicator lamp (left, right)

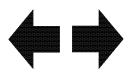
The lamp is illuminated for 2 seconds only when the starter switch has been turned to the "ON" position.



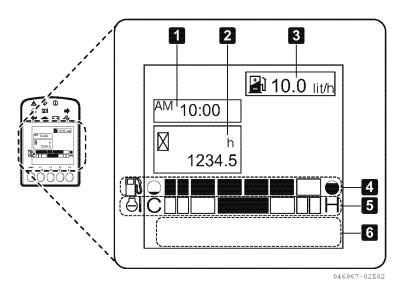








■ LCD screen (Normal screen)



1 Clock

The clock displays the current time. For the time setting method, refer to the procedure for setting the date and time on page 107.

Note:

Date and time settings are reset each time the battery is removed.

2 Hour meter

The hour meter indicates the total accumulated hours of the machine operation.

The reading of the hour meter helps you set time intervals for periodic servicing of the machine. While the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the hour meter will continue registering even if the engine is not running.

The hour meter reading increases by "1" per hour regardless of engine speed.

The digit at the far right registers "1" per 0.1 hour (6 minutes).



10:0

046873-00X00

AM

3 Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption is calculated from the amount of fuel used and displayed on the screen. The fuel consumption can be shown or hidden, and the fuel unit can be switched by changing the settings.

For the setting method, refer to "Fuel consumption display setting" on page 108.

Note:

Fuel consumption changes depending on the working load and engine speed. The fuel consumption currently displayed should be

used as a guide.

4 Fuel meter

The fuel meter displays the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

The fuel meter and caution lamp flash when the fuel level in the tank falls below a prescribed level. When the indicator shows levels close to empty

 \bigcirc , the tank should be refueled as soon as possible.

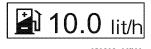
The fuel level indicated by the fuel meter may vary depending on the orientation the machine; for example, when the machine is tilted.

5 Engine water temp. meter

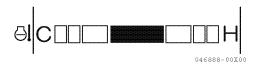
This meter indicates the temperature of the engine cooling water.

The meter and warning lamp flash when the cooling water temperature rises abnormally while the machine is operating; at the same time, an error code and an icon indicating that the cooling water temperature is abnormal are displayed on the screen and the buzzer sounds.

If the meter flashes and the buzzer sounds, immediately stop operation and reduce the engine speed to low idle. After the meter indicates low temperatures, stop the engine and carry out inspections according to Section "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.







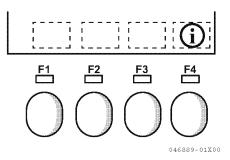
6 Function switch guidance

This guidance uses icons to indicate the current functions of the function switches.

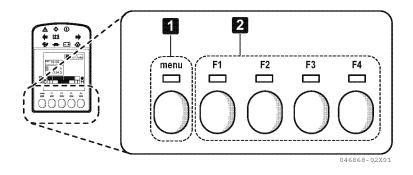
The functions of the individual function switches change depending on the status of the machine or the screen currently displayed.

The current function of each switch can be checked on the icon displayed above its corresponding switch.

Touching the icon with a finger does not activate its corresponding function. Press the switch located under the icon to activate the function.



Function switches



The function switches in the bottom part of the LCD monitor comprise 5 switches (a menu switch and F1 - F4 switches) and their functions change depending on the status of the machine or the screen currently displayed.

The switches can be used when the LED lamps located just above the individual switches are illuminated green.

1 Menu switch

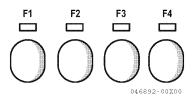
Pressing this switch brings up the main menu on the screen.

For details of the menu screen, refer to the description of "Main menu" on page 98.

2 F1 - F4 switches

The functions of the individual switches change depending on the screen currently displayed. For switch operations on each screen, refer to "LCD Monitor Operation Method" on page 97.





Operation of LCD Monitor during Start-up

IMPORTANT

Be sure to carry out start-up inspection by referring to the instructions in PART: "MAINTENANCE" or Section "3. Operating Instructions" on page 143 of this manual as well as messages displayed on the LCD monitor.

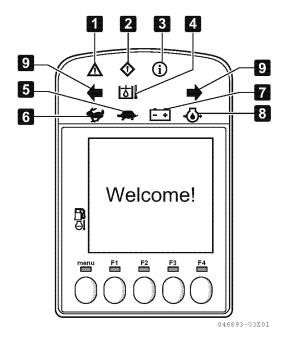
- When the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position, the Start screen (Welcome!) appears and the LED lamps located just above the function switches and the following LED lamps light up and the buzzer sounds.
 - **1** Warning lamp
 - 2 Caution lamp
 - 3 Information lamp
 - 4 Hydraulic oil temp. lamp
 - **5** Low speed travel lamp
 - 6 High speed travel lamp
 - Battery charge lamp
 - 8 Engine oil pressure lamp
 - 9 Direction indicator lamp

If any of the LED lamps does not light up or the buzzer does not sound, the LCD monitor may malfunction. Immediately contact the nearest dealer for service.

The LED lamps go out, the buzzer stops sounding and the LCD moves to the next screen 2 seconds after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.

Note:

The battery charge lamp and engine oil pressure lamp normally remain illuminated until the engine is started, even after 2 seconds have passed.



The buzzer stops sounding after 2 seconds. However, if the starter switch is left in the "ON" position without the engine being started, current continues to flow.

Leaving the machine in such a state for a prolonged period of time will cause the battery to run down. Whenever the machine is not in use, make sure that the starter switch is in the "OFF" position.

2. If there are problems with the machine or if there is some information such as maintenance notices, problem or information details are displayed.

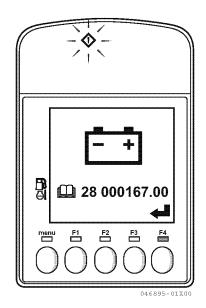
When there are problems with the machine:

Icons and error codes representing error details are displayed on the LCD screen and the warning or caution lamp flashes depending on the error.

If an error is displayed, do not start the engine and immediately check the error for details to take necessary corrective measures.

Icons displayed on the screen are listed in the table below.

If an error other than the following is displayed, contact the nearest dealer.



lcon	Error description	Warning/caution lamp	Corrective measures
	Abnormal engine cool- ing water temperature	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to Sec- tion "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.
+@+	Abnormal engine oil pressure	Warning lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to Sec- tion "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.
- +	Insufficient battery charge	Caution lamp flashing	Stop the engine startup process and inspect the engine according to Sec- tion "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.
\overline{O}	Clogged air cleaner element	Caution lamp flashing	Check and clean air cleaner element according to " Checking and cleaning the air cleaner" on page 299.
	Insufficient amount of fuel	Caution lamp flashing	Refill the fuel tank.
\diamondsuit	Other errors	Warning or caution lamp flashing	Check the error code and contact the nearest dealer.

Note:

For details of error codes, refer to Appendix Table "List of error codes displayed on LCD monitor" on page 343.

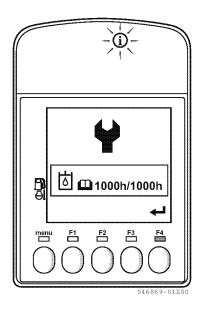
When there is more than one machine problem, icons and error codes are alternately displayed on the screen every 5 seconds. Pressing the F4 switch ← allows display of the next screen.

When there is some information such as maintenance notices:

When there is some information such as maintenance notices, details of information are displayed on the LCD screen and the information lamp flashes.

Check the information details and take necessary measures.

Icons displayed on the screen are listed in the table below.



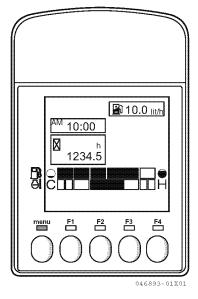
lcon	Description	Measures	Reference
► ► • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Notice of date and time settings	Set the date and time.	Procedure for setting the date and time - page 107
500h/ 500h 046897-00X00	Maintenance notice: Engine oil	Replace the engine oil.	Procedure for replacing the engine oil and the engine oil filter - page 299
500h/ 500h	Maintenance notice: Engine oil filter	Replace the engine oil fil- ter.	Procedure for replacing the engine oil and the engine oil filter - page 299
1000h/1000h 046899-00X00	Maintenance notice: Hydraulic oil	Replace the hydraulic oil.	Procedure for checking and replenishing the hydraulic oil in the hydraulic oil tank - page 149
500h/ 500h 046900-00000	Maintenance notice: Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace the hydraulic oil return filter.	Procedure for replacing the hydraulic oil return filter - page 310
500h/ 500h 046901-00X00	Maintenance notice: Air cleaner element	Replace the air cleaner element.	Procedure for replacing the air cleaner element - page 309
500h/ 500h 046902-00X00	Maintenance notice: Fuel filter element	Replace the fuel filter ele- ment.	Procedure for replacing the fuel filter element - page 305
1000h/1000h 046903-00200	Maintenance notice: Travel reduction gear oil	Replace the travel reduc- tion gear oil.	Procedure for replacing the travel reduction gear oil - page 311

Note:

When there is more than one information item, icons are alternately displayed on the screen every 2 seconds. Pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow allows display of the next screen.

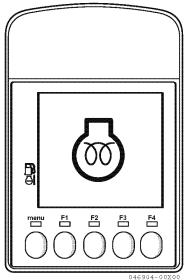
3. After the error or information screen disappears, the display returns to the normal screen.

The normal screen is also displayed when there is no machine problem or information.



Note:

In cases where the engine is cold in cold weather, the screen showing that the engine glow plug is operating appears prior to the normal screen appearing. After completion of the engine glow plug operation, the normal screen appears.



Operation of LCD Monitor during Machine Operation

Operation of LCD monitor when problems occur during machine operation Display of machine problems

If problems occur on the machine in operation, corresponding LED lamps light up or flash and details of problems are displayed on the LCD screen.

Note:

When more than one problem occurs, error codes and icons are alternately displayed on the screen every 2 seconds.

Display of warnings

A WARNING

If a warning lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds, immediately stop operation and take necessary corrective measures.

If serious problems requiring immediate stoppage of operation occur during the operation of the machine, the warning lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds continuously.

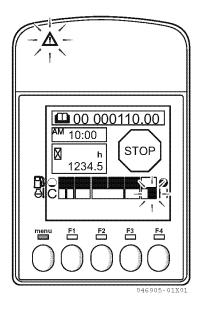
Icons and error codes showing problem details are displayed on the LCD screen.

When the warning lamp flashes, immediately stop operation and check the error for details to take necessary corrective measures.

If the warning lamp flashes and an error screen appears due to any error other than those described below, immediately stop operation and contact the nearest dealer.

Note:

- For details of error codes, refer to Appendix Table "List of error codes displayed on LCD monitor" on page 343.
- If an abnormality related to nitrogen oxide (NOx) in the exhaust gas occurs, : ? is displayed on the LCD screen.
- If an abnormality related to particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas occurs, (1) is displayed on the LCD screen.



OPERATION

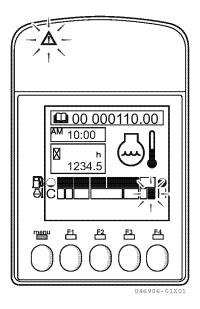
Engine water temp. alarm

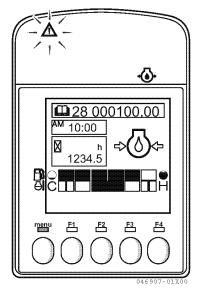
If the engine cooling water temperature rises excessively during the operation of the machine, the warning lamp and engine water temp. meter flash, the buzzer sounds continuously and the high temperature icon in and the stop icon in are displayed alternately on the LCD screen. Because this indicates the first signs of engine overheating, immediately stop operation and reduce the engine speed to low idle. After the engine cooling water temperature drops sufficiently, take appropriate corrective measures.

• Engine oil pressure alarm

If the engine oil pressure falls outside the normal range, the warning lamp flashes, the engine oil pressure lamp lights up, the buzzer sounds continuously and the engine oil pressure icon $rac{1}{6}$ and the stop icon $rac{1}{6}$ are displayed alternately on the LCD screen.

In such cases, immediately stop the engine and carry out inspections according to Section "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248.





Display of cautions

If a caution lamp flashes, take necessary corrective measures as soon as possible.

If problems requiring the earliest possible implementation of corrective measures occur during the operation of the machine, the caution lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds intermittently.

Pictorial symbols and error codes showing problem details are displayed on the LCD screen.

When the stop buzzer icon 🎉 is displayed on the LCD screen, press the F4 switch to stop the buzzer.

The buzzer may not sound for some errors.

When the caution lamp flashes, check the error for details and take necessary corrective measures as soon as possible.

If the caution lamp flashes and an error screen appears due to any error other than those described below, contact the nearest dealer as soon as possible.

Note:

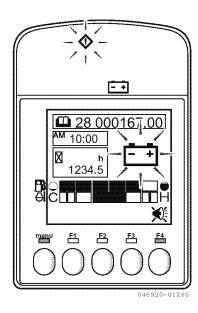
For details of error codes, refer to Appendix Table "List of error codes displayed on LCD monitor" on page 343.

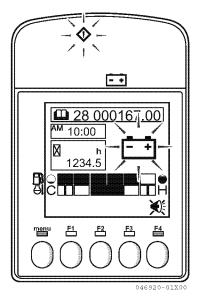
Battery charge alarm

If the battery is not being charged properly while the engine is running, the caution lamp flashes, the battery charge lamp lights up, the buzzer sounds intermittently and the battery icon 🖆 is displayed flashing on the LCD screen. In such cases, carry out inspections according to Section "7.4 Troubleshooting" on page 248 as soon as possible.

Note:

Press the F4 switch 💥 to stop the buzzer.





Air cleaner clogging alarm

When the air cleaner becomes clogged, the caution lamp flashes, the buzzer sounds intermittently and the air cleaner clogging icon 💆 flashes on the LCD monitor.

In such cases, check and clean the air cleaner as soon as possible according to " Checking and cleaning the air cleaner" on page 299.

Note:

Press the F4 switch 💥 to stop the buzzer.

Fuel shortage alarm

When the amount of the fuel remaining in the fuel tank becomes low, the caution lamp and fuel meter flash and the fuel icon \square is displayed flashing on the LCD screen. In such cases, refill the fuel tank soon.

Note:

This alarm is not accompanied by a buzzer tone or display of an error code.

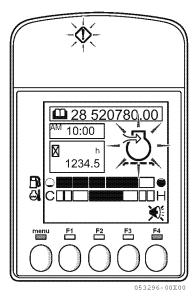
Sensor failure alarm

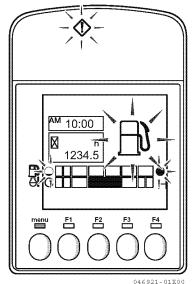
If problems occur with the sensor that measures the amount of fuel in the tank or one that measures the engine cooling water temperature, the caution lamp and relevant meter flash and the caution icon $\langle \mathbf{p} \rangle$ is displayed flashing on the LCD screen.

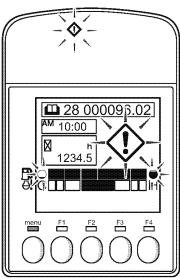
In such cases, contact the nearest dealer for service as soon as possible.

Note:

This alarm is not accompanied by a buzzer tone.







046923-01X00

Display of information

If there is some information such as maintenance notices, the information lamp flashes.

The information icon (i) is displayed on the LCD screen above the F4 switch.

Pressing the F4 switch will display details of the information.

Check the details and take necessary measures.

Note:

When there is more than one information item, information details are alternately displayed on the screen every 2 seconds.

Maintenance notices

These notices inform the operator that, based on accumulated hours of operation, maintenance items have reached the point where they require maintenance.

Pressing the F4 switch under the information icon (i) will display items that have reached their maintenance intervals.

Check the items and carry out inspections and maintenance according to the instructions in PART: "MAINTENANCE". After completion of the work, reset the accumulated time for the maintenance item according to the procedure for resetting the accumulated maintenance time on page 101.

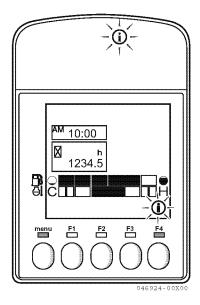
Date and time settings notice

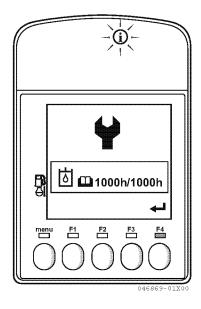
This notice informs the operator that the date and time need to be set, for example, when the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.

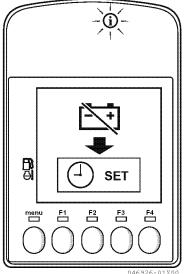
Pressing the F4 switch under the information

icon (i) will display an icon indicating that the date and time need to be set after battery reconnection.

Set the date and time according to the procedure for setting the date and time on page 107.







LCD Monitor Operation Method

When the starter switch is in the "ON" position, the LCD monitor can be operated using the function switches in the bottom part of the monitor.

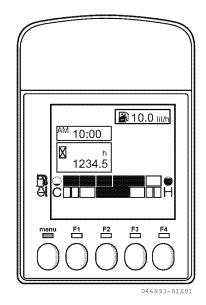
The switches are available when the LED lamps located just above the individual switches are illuminated green.

Menu switch: Used to display the main menu screen.

F1 - F4 switches: The functions of the individual switches change depending on the screen currently displayed and currently available functions are displayed with their corresponding icons in the function switch guidance part of the LCD screen just above the switches.

Icons used for function switch guidance serve as follows:

う	Goes back to the previous screen
	Moves to the item left of the one currently selected
	Moves to the item right of the one currently selected
	Moves to the item above the one currently selected
▼	Moves to the item below of the one currently selected
لھ ا	Selects an item or complete a setting
Ŧ	Increases the selected value by one
(R)	Resets the selected value
í	Displays details of information such as maintenance notices



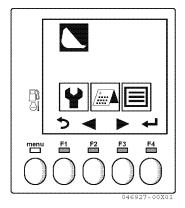
Main menu

Pressing the menu switch with the starter switch in the "ON" position brings up the main menu screen. Selecting an icon from the main menu allows display of its corresponding screen.

The icon currently selected is highlighted.

Select the desired icon by pressing the F2 switch ◀ or F3 switch ► based on the function switch guidance displayed on the screen. Press the F4 switch ← to display its corresponding screen.

	Displays the normal screen.
¥	Displays the maintenance screen.
	Displays the Machine Operation Management screen.
	Displays the Settings screen.



■ Maintenance screen

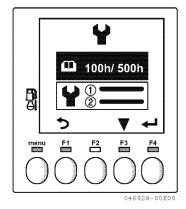
Selecting the maintenance icon P with the F2 switch \blacktriangleleft or F3 switch \blacktriangleright from the main menu and then pressing the F4 switch \Leftarrow brings up the Maintenance screen.

The Maintenance Time screen or Maintenance History screen may be displayed from the Maintenance screen.

Selecting the desired icon with the F2 switch ▲ or F3 switch ▼ and then pressing the F4 switch ← brings up its corresponding screen.

🕮 100h/ 500h	Displays t	he Ma	aintenance Time	screen.
	Displays screen.	the	Maintenance	History

Pressing the menu switch or the F1 switch \Rightarrow will return to the main menu.

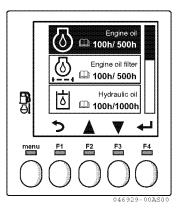


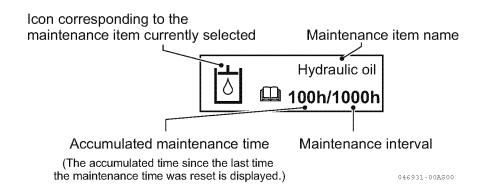
Maintenance Time screen

This screen displays maintenance intervals and accumulated maintenance times since the last maintenance.

The initial settings for maintenance items and maintenance intervals displayed are listed in the table below.

lcon	Maintenance item name	Maintenance intervals	Description
\odot	Engine oil	500 hrs	Replacement of engine oil
<u>.</u>	Engine oil filter	500 hrs	Replacement of engine oil fil- ter
히	Hydraulic oil	1000 hrs	Replacement of hydraulic oil
<u>ه</u>	Return filter	1st time: 250 hrs 2nd and later times: 500 hrs	Replacement of hydraulic oil return filter
ন্ <u>হ</u>	Air filter	500 hrs	Replacement of air cleaner element
<u>, B</u> ,	Fuel filter	500 hrs	Replacement of fuel filter ele- ment
\bigcirc	Travel reduc- tion gear oil	1st time: 100 hrs 2nd and later times: 1000 hrs	Replacement of travel reduc- tion gear oil

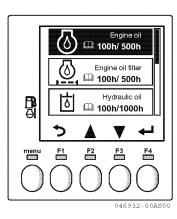


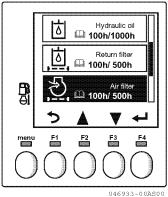


Maintenance items are displayed in vertical alignment on the LCD screen.

Items that are not currently shown on the screen can be displayed by scrolling the list up or down using the F2 switch \blacktriangle or F3 switch \blacktriangledown .

Pressing the F1 switch \Rightarrow will return to the Maintenance screen.





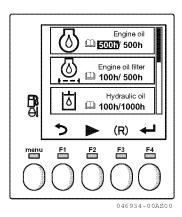
Resetting the accumulated maintenance time

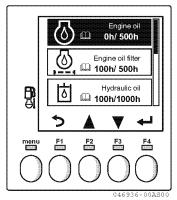
After completion of maintenance work, reset the accumulated maintenance time to zero according to the procedure below.

- **2.** Press the F3 switch above which (R) is displayed to reset the accumulated time to zero.
- 3. After "0" is displayed, pressing the F4 switch
 to complete the reset procedure will produce a bleep, indicating completion of the setting, and the display will return to the Maintenance Time screen. The date and time and the number of hours indicated on the hour meter are recorded in the maintenance history.

Note:

To cancel the reset made by pressing the F3 switch (R) to change the value of accumulated time to zero, press the F1 switch \checkmark before pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow to return the value to the previous accumulated time value.





Changing the maintenance intervals

To change maintenance intervals, follow the procedure below.

1. Select the item to be changed on the Maintenance Time screen and press the F4 switch
to highlight the accumulated time of the selected item.

- Pressing the F2 switch ▶ will highlight the digit in the thousands place. Likewise, each time the F2 switch ▶ is pressed, the digits in the hundreds, tens and ones, the accumulated maintenance time and again the digit in the thousands will be highlighted in sequence.

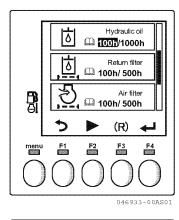
Note:

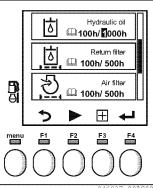
Pressing and holding the F3 switch \boxplus will increase the value continuously until the switch is released.

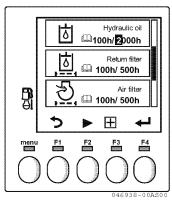
4. After completion of the change of maintenance intervals by repeating Steps 2 and 3, pressing the F4 switch ← to execute the change will produce a bleep, indicating completion of the setting, and the display will return to the Maintenance Time screen.

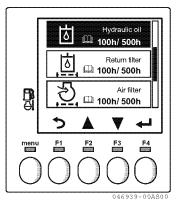
Note:

For recommended maintenance intervals, refer to Section "7. Maintenance Table" on page 272.



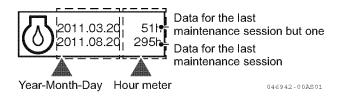






Maintenance History screen

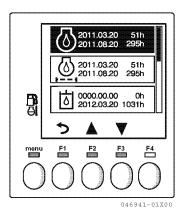
This screen shows data on the past two maintenance sessions. The data includes the date and time of maintenance and the number of hours indicated on the hour meter.

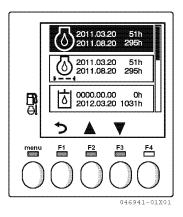


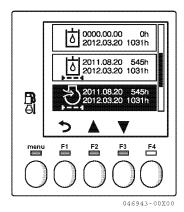
Maintenance items are displayed in vertical alignment on the LCD screen.

Items that are not currently shown on the screen can be displayed by scrolling the list up or down with the F2 switch \blacktriangle or F3 switch \blacktriangledown .

Pressing the F1 switch \Rightarrow will return to the Maintenance screen.







Machine Operation Management screen

Selecting the calendar icon $\ensuremath{\boxtimes}$ with the F2 switch

 ✓ or F3 switch ► from the main menu and then pressing the F4 switch ← brings up the Machine Operation Management screen.

This screen allows checking of the operating hours of the machine in the past 90 days.

The current month calendar will appear with the current date highlighted.

The machine operating hours for each day are displayed roughly with the corresponding numbers of dots under the date number.

Pressing the F2 switch \triangleleft or F3 switch \blacktriangleright will change a selected date to another, allowing checking of the operational status of the machine in the past 90 days.

Note:

Pressing and holding the F2 switch ◀ or F3 switch ▶ will quickly change selected dates continuously until the switch is released.

Selecting the desired date and then pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow will display the machine operating hours for the selected date.

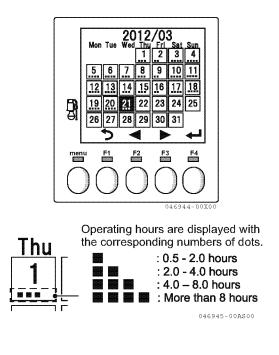
Pressing and holding the F2 switch ◀ or F3 switch ► allows changing of the displayed date.

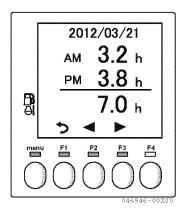
Note:

If the date and time settings are incorrect, the correct date and time cannot be displayed.

Because the clock on the LCD monitor stops when the battery is removed, if the date changes with the battery removed, the date displayed on the Machine Operation Management screen will be different from the actual date. Data recorded on incorrect dates cannot be corrected.

Data recorded prior to the 90 days before the current date are automatically deleted.





OPERATION

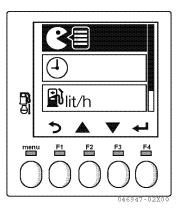
Settings screen

Selecting the settings icon \blacksquare with the F2 switch

 \blacktriangleleft or F3 switch \blacktriangleright from the main menu and then pressing the F4 switch \Leftarrow brings up the Settings screen.

Selecting the desired item to be set on the Settings screen with the F2 switch \blacktriangle or F3 switch \blacktriangledown and then pressing the F4 switch \Leftarrow allows changing of the settings listed in the table below.

B	Language setting: Changes the language used on the various screens such as the Maintenance Time screen.	
4	Date and time settings: Sets the current date and time.	
	Fuel consumption display setting: Switches between show/hide of the instantaneous fuel consumption calculated by the controller, or switches the unit.	
	Switch confirmation sound setting: Sets whether to emit a confirmation sound when a switch is pressed.	
Ċ	Brightness setting: Sets the brightness level of the LED lamps and LCD screen while the work lamp is on.	



Setting the language

Selecting the language setting icon € ⟨≡ and then pressing the F4 switch ← brings up the Language Setting screen.

The currently set language is highlighted when this screen appears.

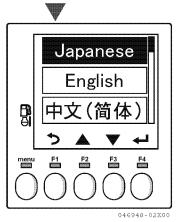
Selecting the desired language with the F2 switch

▲ or F3 switch ♥ and then pressing the F4 switch ← will produce a bleep, indicating completion of the setting, and the selected language will be displayed in the center of the screen for 2 seconds. This completes the change of language settings. After completion of the language setting, the screen will return to the main menu.

Indication	Language
Japanese	Japanese
English	English
中文(简体)	Chinese (Simplified)
中文(繁体)	Chinese (Traditional)
한글어	Korean
Español	Spanish
Italiano	Italian
Français	French
Deutsch	German
Português	Portuguese
Suomi	Finnish
Svenska	Swedish
Русский	Russian
Symbol	(Icons only)

Available languages are listed in the table below.





OPERATION

Setting the date and time

Selecting the clock icon ④ and then pressing the F4 switch ← brings up the Date and Time Settings screen.

On this screen, the date and time currently set is displayed.

Pressing the F2 switch \blacktriangleright will highlight the year displayed on the screen. Press the F3 switch \boxdot repeatedly to increase the value by one until the desired value is reached.

Note:

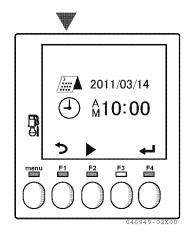
Pressing and holding the F3 switch \boxplus will increase the value continuously until the switch is released.

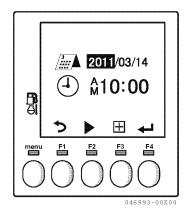
Each time the F2 switch ► is pressed, "Year," "Month," "Day," "AM/PM," "Hour," "Minute" and again "Year" will be highlighted in sequence. The currently highlighted item can be changed.

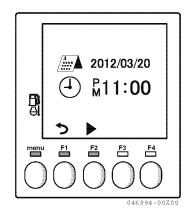
Pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow to execute the change will produce a bleep, indicating completion of the setting, and the set date and time will be displayed on the screen. Pressing the F1 switch \checkmark will return to the Settings screen.

To return to the Settings screen without executing changes in date and time settings, press the F1 switch \checkmark before pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow .









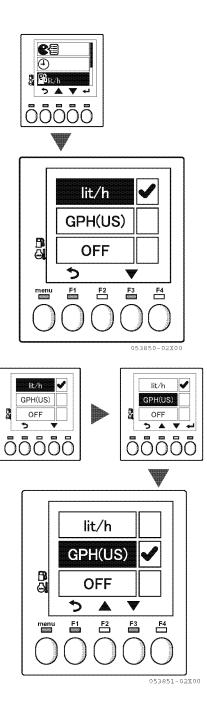
Fuel consumption display setting

Select the fuel consumption icon B and then press the F4 switch \twoheadleftarrow to display the current fuel consumption on the screen.

A check mark is displayed to the right of the currently selected item. The unit displayed when shipping is set to Liters.

- lit/h : The current fuel consumption is displayed in liters per hour (lit/h) on the normal screen.
- GPH: The current fuel consumption is displayed in gallons per hour (GPH) on the normal screen.
- OFF : The current fuel consumption is not displayed on the normal screen.

Selecting the desired item with the F2 switch ▲ or F3 switch ▼ and then pressing the F4 switch ← will move the check mark to the selected item and make a bleep sound indicating the completion of the setting. This completes the setting change.



Setting the switch confirmation sound

Selecting the confirmation sound icon $\mathbf{I} \in \mathbf{I}$ and then pressing the F4 switch \mathbf{I} brings up the Switch Confirmation Sound Setting screen.

A check mark is displayed on the right of the currently selected item.

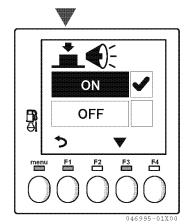
- ON : A switch confirmation sound is emitted each time a function switch is pressed.
- OFF : No switch confirmation sound is emitted even when a function switch is pressed.

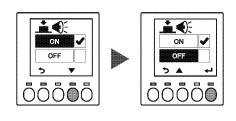
Selecting the desired item with the F2 switch ▲ or F3 switch ▼ and then pressing the F4 switch ← will move the check mark to the selected item and produce a bleep, indicating the completion of the setting. This completes the setting change.

Note:

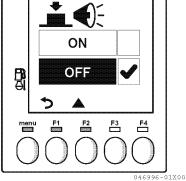
Except for switch confirmation sounds, buzzer sounds emitted when settings are completed or when a failure occurs, for example, cannot be turned off.











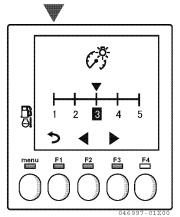
Setting the brightness

Selecting the brightness icon ♂ and then pressing the F4 switch ← brings up the Brightness Setting screen.

This screen allows selecting the brightness level in 5 steps for the LED lamps and LCD screen while the working lamps are on.

The \checkmark mark is displayed just above the graduation mark representing the currently selected brightness level and the corresponding number is highlighted.

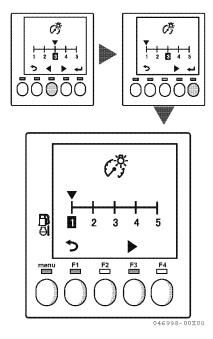




Move the ▼ mark on the scale to the left or right using the F2 switch ◀ or F3 switch ► to select the desired brightness level. The brightness of the LED lamps and LCD screen will change according to the selected level.

Selecting the appropriate level of brightness and then pressing the F4 switch \leftarrow will highlight the number corresponding to the selected brightness level and produce a bleep, indicating completion of the setting. This completes the brightness setting.

Pressing the F1 switch **5** will return to the Settings screen.



Operations of the LCD monitor with the starter switch in the "OFF" position

Even when the starter switch is in the "OFF" position, pressing and holding the menu switch allows checking of the hour meter and maintenance time. Holding the menu switch down will display the Start screen for 2 seconds and then the hour meter.

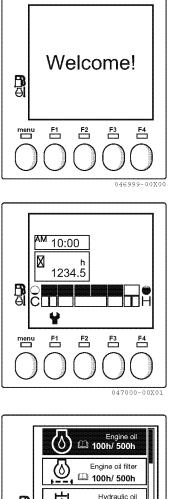
This screen allows checking of the hours of operation on the hour meter without starting the engine.

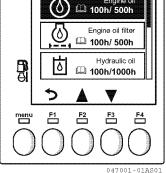
Pressing the F1 switch 😭 while holding the menu switch down will display a screen showing the maintenance time.

Select the desired maintenance item with the F2 switch \blacktriangle or F3 switch \blacktriangledown .

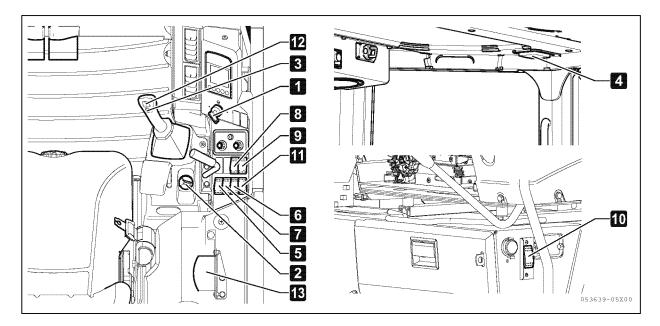
Pressing the F1 switch \Rightarrow will display the screen showing the hour meter.

When releasing the menu switch, the screen will disappear.





2.2 Switches



1 Starter switch

Use this switch to start and stop the engine.

OFF position

Turn the starter switch key to "OFF" to stop the engine and disconnect electrical circuit or remove the starter switch key.

ON position

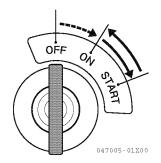
When the starter switch key is in this position, electricity flows in the charging circuit and electrical switches. The starter switch key must be held in the "ON" position while the engine is running.

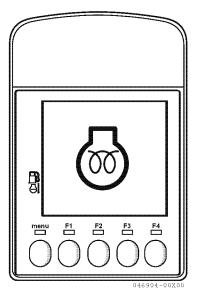
IMPORTANT

In cold weather, operate the heater for several seconds after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position to facilitate engine starting.

During heater operation, an icon indicating that the heater is operating is displayed on the LCD monitor, as shown at the right.

When the engine has been warmed up, the icon disappears. Start the engine only after confirming that the icon has disappeared.





START position

Turn the starter switch key to "START" to start the engine. Release the starter switch key after the engine is started and it will return to the "ON" position.

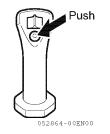
2 Engine control dial

The dial controls the engine speed (output). IDLING : Turn the dial fully to the left (counterclockwise) RUN : Turn the dial fully to the right (clockwise)



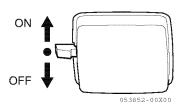
Press the switch on the top of the right control lever to sound the horn.





4 Room lamp switch

- ON : The lamp is illuminated.
- OFF : The lamp is not illuminated.
- Intermediate position: The lamp turns on when the door is opened and goes out automatically after about 15 seconds. The lamp goes out immediately after the door is closed.



5 Travel automatic dual speed switch

It is the switch for shifting the travel speed to "High Speed Travel". The high speed travel lamp on the LCD monitor lights up when this switch is in the "ON" position.

When the travel force is required on soft ground and slopes even during the high speed travel, you do not need to shift the switch, as it will automatically shift to the low speed travel.

- ON : High speed travel (the lamp goes on)
- OFF : Low speed travel (the lamp goes off)

Note :

When traveling is shifted from "High Speed Travel" to "Low Speed Travel" due to the load during traveling, the travel speed will change without the engine speed being changed.

6 Wiper switch

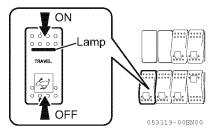
The wiper on the windshield is activated.

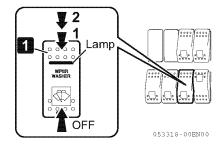
- Position 1 : The wiper is activated (the lamp goes on)
- Position **2** : With the switch in Position **1**, press it further to spray the washer fluid
- Position OFF : The wiper is off (the lamp goes off)

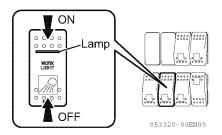
7 Light switch

The working lamps and inner instrument lamps go on when the starter switch key is in the "ON" position.

- ON : The working lamps and inner instrument lamps are turned on (the lamps go on)
- OFF : Turned off (the lamps go off)







B Auto deceleration switch

This switch is used to activate the equipment that reduces the engine speed and fuel consumption when the engine power is not required. for example, when the travel levers and control levers are in neutral.

- ON : The auto deceleration is activated (the lamp goes on)
- OFF : The auto deceleration is deactivated (the lamp goes off)

When the auto deceleration switch is switched to the "ON" position and all the control levers and pedals are placed in their neutral position, about 4 seconds later the engine speed is reduced to low idle. If any of the control levers or pedals is operated, the engine speed returns to the speed originally set by the engine control dial.

When the auto deceleration switch is switched to the "OFF" position, whether or not the control levers or pedals are operated, the engine speed returns to the speed originally set by the engine control dial.

Note :

The auto deceleration function may not work until the hydraulic oil warms up. This phenomenon does not constitute a failure.

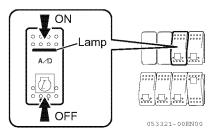
9 Eco mode switch

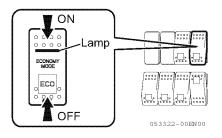
This is a switch for drastically reducing the fuel consumption, as the engine speed is reduced to the dial "9" or equivalent even when the engine control dial is in the maximum "10".

- ON : The eco mode is activated (the lamp goes on)
- OFF : The eco mode is deactivated (the lamp goes off)

Note :

The eco mode is not activated when the engine speed is below the dial "8" of the engine control dial.



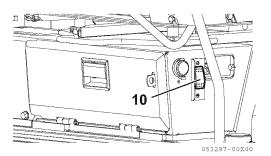


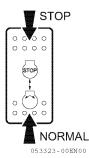
10 Engine stop switch

If the engine is not stopped by turning the starter switch to the "OFF" position, set this switch to the "STOP" position.

After stopping the engine, always be sure to return the engine stop switch to the "NORMAL" position. When the switch is in "STOP" position, engine cannot be started.

In addition, be sure to return the starter switch to "OFF" position to avoid running the battery down.

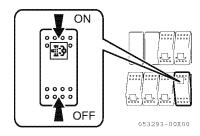




DPF manual regeneration switch

This switch is used to perform DPF manual regeneration.

For the method of DPF manual regeneration, refer to Section "3.26 Handling diesel particulate filter (DPF)" on page 220.



P.T.O. switch

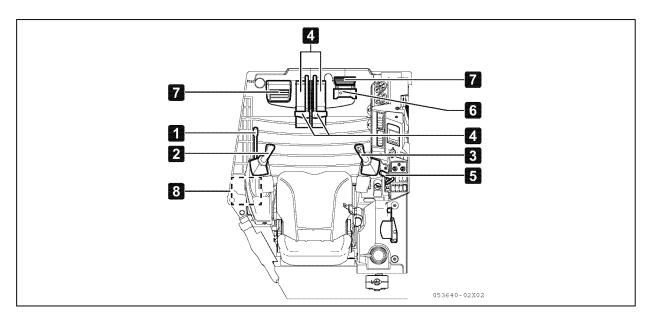
Move the switch on the top of the right and left control levers to the right and left to control the P.T.O. For handling P.T.O., refer to Section "3.23 Handling hydraulic P.T.O." on page 208.

13 Quick coupler switch box

Refer to Section "3.22 Handling quick coupler" on page 197.



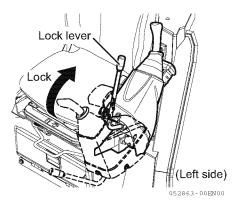
2.3 Control levers and pedals



Lock lever (for the implement control levers on both sides, blade lever, boom swing pedal and travel levers)

The lock lever locks the implement control levers, blade lever, boom swing pedal and the travel levers.

- When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place the bucket on the ground and move lock lever to the lock position. Keep in mind that if you should touch an unlocked lever inadvertently, a serious accident could occur.
- Be sure to place the lock lever securely in the lock position. If not, they could slip out of the lock position. Thus always make sure that the lock lever is in the lock position as illustrated in the figure at the right. Note that even if the lock lever is in the lock position, blade is not locked and is free to operate.
- When pulling the lock lever back, be careful not to touch the control lever.
- Remember that if the lock lever is not pulled back fully, the implement will not be locked.



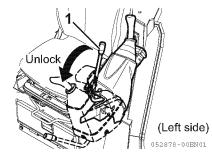
IMPORTANT

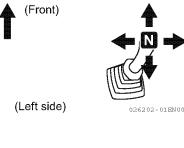
The machine uses the hydraulic lock system. If the lock lever is in the lock position, all the hydraulic cylinders for the boom, arm bucket, boom swing, blade and blade as well as the swing motor, P.T.O. and travel will not operate although the control levers are free to move.

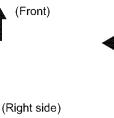
When pushing the lock lever forward, be careful not to accidentally touch the implement control levers.

The relationship between the control lever shift configuration and the implement movement is detailed in this manual. To prevent an accident due to operational error, therefore, the hydraulic system must never be modified by reconnecting the hydraulic hoses and valves.

2 Control lever (L)









3 Control lever (R)

Use these levers to control the implements and swinging of upperstructure.

Refer to Section "3.8 Operating the implement" on page 173.

4 Travel levers and pedals

The travel levers and pedals control the traveling of the machine.

A WARNING

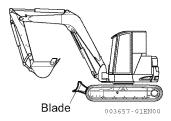
- If the blade is in the reverse direction, the travel levers and pedals should also be operated in reverse for forward and backward travel.
- When operating the travel levers and pedals, you must check to see if the blade is in the normal position or in the reverse position. Note that the blade is in the normal position when the sprocket is in the rear. Refer to Section "1.1 Overview of the machine" on page 77.

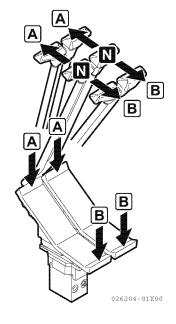
When the blade is in the normal position: The pedal operation is in the parenthesis.

- A : Forward : Push the travel levers forward. (Step on the front position of the pedals)
- B : Reverse : Pull the travel levers backward. (Step on the rear position of the pedals)
- **N** : Neutral.....The machine stops.

Note :

When the travel lever is shifted to the forward or reverse position from neutral, an alarm sounds to inform the surrounding area that the machine is about to start moving.





5 Blade lever

Use this lever to control the blade.

IMPORTANT

The blade lever is not locked by setting the lock lever to the lock position. Never touch the blade lever when not operating the blade.

A : Down : Push the lever forward.

B : Up : Pull the lever backward.

N : Neutral : When released, the lever will return to the neutral position and the blade is held as it is.

Boom swing pedal

Use this pedal to swing the boom to right and left.

A : Swing right : move to the right.

B : Swing left : move to the left.

N : Neutral : When released, the pedal will return to the neutral position and the boom is held as it is.

Pedal guard (foot rest)

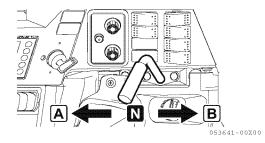
The boom swing pedal has a pedal guard.

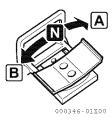
A WARNING

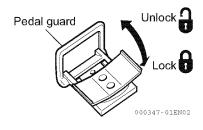
To avoid bodily injury, securely place the pedal guard in the lock position whenever the boom swing pedal is not being operated.

Placing the pedal guard in the lock position completely covers the boom swing pedal.

To prevent misuse, always set the pedal guard in the lock position whenever the boom swing pedal is not being operated. The pedal guard can be used as a foot rest.







2 way valve

This valve is used to switch between operating patterns for the right and left control levers and located under the cover on the floor below the left control lever.

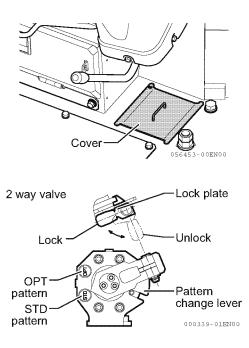
For details of the operating patterns, refer to Section "3.8 Operating the implement" on page 173.

STD: ISO pattern

- OPT: OPT pattern
 - **1.** Stop the engine and make sure the lock lever is in lock position.
 - 2. Open the cover.
 - **3.** Unlock the selector handle to move it to suitable position.
 - 4. Securely lock the selector handle.
 - 5. Close the cover.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to place the lock plate in the lock position.



2.4 Engine hood

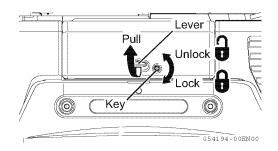
Do not open the engine hood while the engine is running. Rotating fan, fan belt and high temperature components can cause personal injury. Check and service the engine after it has been stopped and temperatures have cooled.

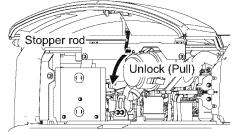
Opening the engine hood

- **1.** Insert the starter switch key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock.
- **2.** Pull the engine hood lever to release the lock, and then the engine hood opens.
- **3.** The engine food fully opens to be locked with the stopper rod.

■ Closing the engine hood

- **1.** Lift the engine hood slightly and pull the stopper rod to disengage the lock.
- **2.** Close the engine hood and press it fully until it clicks.
- **3.** Turn the starter switch key clockwise to lock the engine hood.





055172-00EN00

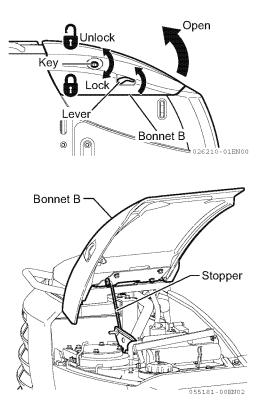
2.5 Bonnet B

Opening the bonnet B

- Insert the starter switch key into the key hole in the bonnet B and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the bonnet B.
- **2.** Pull the lever up to unlock it, and open the bonnet B.
- **3.** The bonnet B fully opens to be locked with the stopper.

Closing the bonnet B

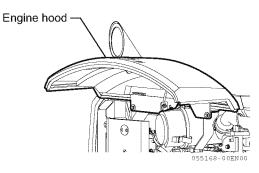
- **1.** Lift the bonnet B slightly and pull the stopper to disengage it.
- **2.** Close the bonnet B and press it down fully until it clicks.
- **3.** Turn the starter switch key clockwise to lock the bonnet B.



2.6 Bonnet R

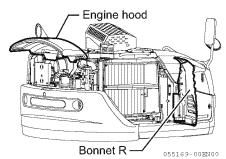
Opening the bonnet R

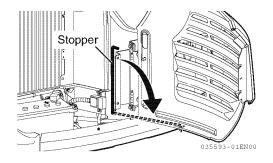
- **1.** Open the engine hood.
- 2. Pull the lock lever back and open the bonnet R.
- 3. Hold the bonnet R with the stopper.



Closing the bonnet R

- **1.** Disengage the stopper rod from the bonnet R and put it back in the unlock position.
- **2.** Close the bonnet R and lock it with the lock lever.
- 3. Close the engine hood.



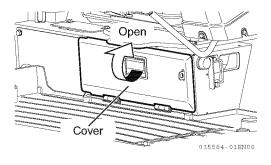


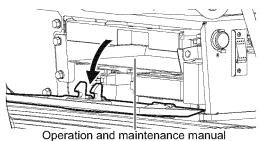
2.7 Storage compartment for the operation & maintenance manual

Storage compartment for the operation & maintenance manual has been provided under the operator's seat.

Pull the lever to open the cover.

Store the operation & maintenance manual in the box.





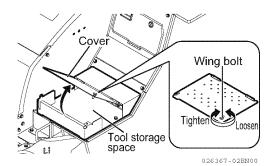
053642-00EN00

2.8 Tool storage space

Loosen the wing bolt and open the cover to find the tool storage space.

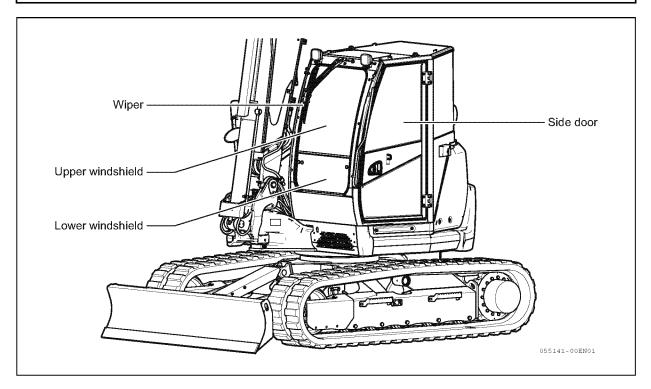
Note :

The tools are optional.



2.9 Windshield

When the side door or upper windshield is open, make sure that it is securely locked in place. If it is not securely locked, it may close unexpectedly due to the impact or vibrations generated while the machine is operating and the operator may get his/her hands caught in or hit his/her head on the door or windshield, resulting in hand or head injuries. In addition, do not stick the head or hands out of the open side door or upper windshield.

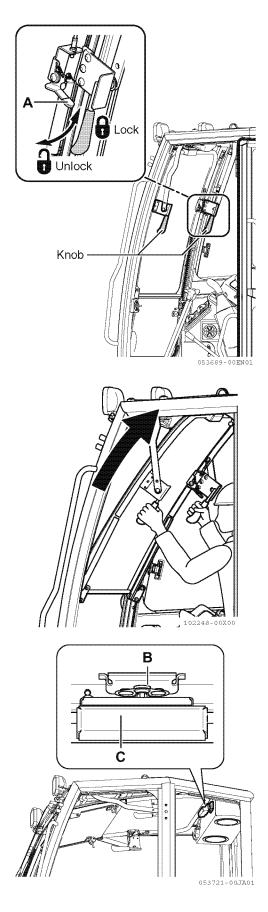


A WARNING

- After opening or closing the lower windshield, always make sure that it is securely locked with the window lock levers. If it is not securely locked, it may come down unexpectedly.
- Always open or close the upper windshield by holding the right and left knobs firmly with the corresponding hands while sitting in the operator's seat. Especially, holding parts other than the knobs with the hands may cause injury to the hands, for example, from being caught in the windshield.
- Before opening or closing the upper windshield with the lower windshield stored on it, always make sure that the lower windshield is securely locked in place.

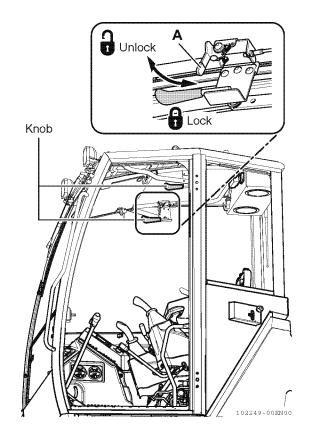
Opening the upper windshield

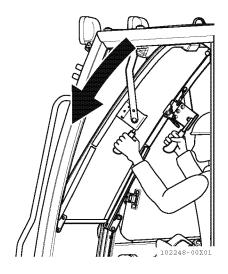
- Hold the right and left knobs with the corresponding hands while sitting in the operator's seat and push the window lock lever A on the right-hand side downward to release the lock.
- 2. After releasing the lock, slide the upper windshield up and backward while pulling it inward with both knobs until the lock C on top of the upper windshield securely engages with the striker B on the ceiling in the cabin.



Closing the upper windshield

- Hold the right and left knobs with the corresponding hands while sitting in the operator's seat and push the window lock lever A on the right-hand side downward to release the lock.
- **2.** After releasing the lock, hold the right and left knobs with the corresponding hands and slowly slide the upper windshield forward while pulling it downward.
- **3.** Push the upper windshield forward with both knobs and secure it in place.

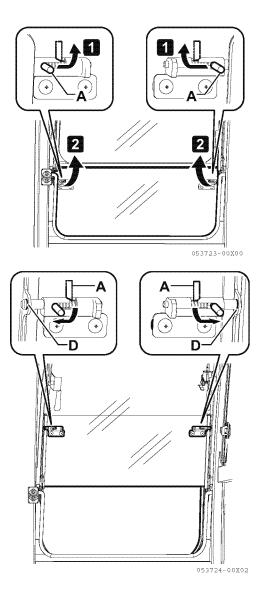




Opening and closing the lower windshield

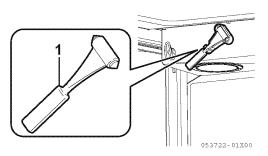
Always fully close and secure the upper windshield in place before opening or closing the lower windshield.

- **1.** To open the lower windshield, pull the right and left window lock levers **A** inward to release the lock.
- 2. Lift the lower windshield up while pulling it inward and align the height of the lock pins on the lower windshield with that of the lock pin holes D in the frame of the upper windshield.
- After aligning their height, turn the window lock levers A downward and insert the lock pins into the lock pin holes D to secure the lower windshield.
- 4. To close the lower windshield, follow steps 1 to3 in reverse order.



2.10 Hammer for emergency escape from operator's cab

If the door of the cabin should not open, hammer **1** is provided inside the cabin to escape from the operator's cab in an emergency.



Break the window glass with the hammer **1** to escape from the operator's cab.

IMPORTANT

- Remove the broken pieces of the window glass from the window frame to prevent any injury by those broken pieces.
- Watch your step not to slip on the broken pieces of the window glass which dropped around your feet.



2.11 Operator's seat

- Be sure to adjust the seat slide to obtain the best operating position whenever you (or a new operator) starts operation.
- Do not place any foreign objects within the moving area of the operator's seat.
- Do not adjust the operator's seat while operating the machine.

Adjust the seat so that the operator can easily operate the control levers in good posture.

Seat position control adjustment

1 Seat position control adjustment (forward and backward)

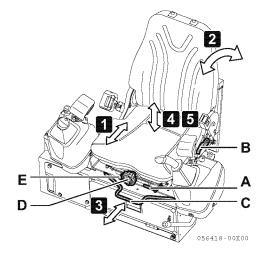
Pull the slide lever **A** upward, to move the seat forward or backward. Adjust the seat to the best position for operating the control levers.

The adjustable amount of seat movement is 4.72 in. (120 mm) maximum, in ten separate positions. However, with the entire seat in the backmost position, the maximum adjustable amount of seat movement is limited to 2.36 in. (60 mm). (See " **3 Entire seat back position control adjustment**" below.)

2 Seat backrest control adjustment

Pull the lever **B** upward to adjust the backrest to the desired position.

Adjust the backrest, keeping your back in contact with the backrest or pushing the backrest with your hand, to prevent the backrest from returning suddenly.



S Entire seat back position control adjustment (forward and backward)

Pull the slide lever **C** upward, to move the seat forward or backward. In this case, the control levers and safety lock levers move together with the seat, so adjust to the best position for operating the travel levers and pedals. The adjustable amount of seat movement is 2.76 in. (70 mm) maximum, in seven separate positions.

4 Weight adjustment

The weight adjustment dial **D** is turned and it can adjust to the hardness of the bearing surface cushion with the operator's weight.

- Turn the weight adjuster dial **D** clockwise the setting weight is increased.
- Turn the weight adjuster dial **D** counterclockwise, the setting weight is decreased.

5 Height of seat adjustment

The height of the seat can be adjusted by turning height adjustment dial **E**. Adjust the seat pushing it with your hand when you lower the seat.

- Turn the height adjustment dial E clockwise, the seat lowers.
- Turn the height adjustment dial E counterclockwise, the seat goes up.

2.12 Headlight

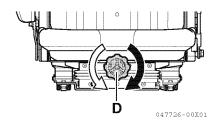
A WARNING

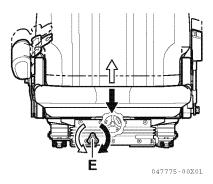
The headlight gets hot when it is turned on. Do not touch it with your bear hand before it cools, to prevent burns.

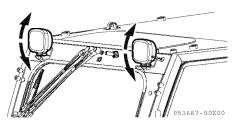
The irradiation (direction) of the headlight can be adjusted. Move the light up and down to adjust the irradiation in the direction where the lighting is needed for the nighttime work.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn the cabin light excessively to prevent damage to the harness.





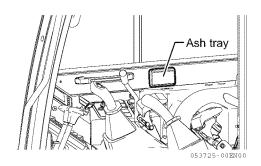


2.13 Ash tray

Do not place any combustible matter in the ash tray.

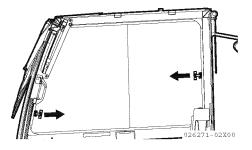
The ash tray cover should be opened only when necessary and kept closed whenever the ash tray is not being used.

To clean the ash tray, open the ash tray cover and pull out the ash tray by pressing the plate spring in the middle.



2.14 Right window glass

Open the window on the right by sliding the glass in direction indicated.



2.15 Cabin side door

Opening and closing the cabin side door

From outside

- **1.** Turn the starter switch key counterclockwise to unlock the side door.
- **2.** Pull the outer handle to the side to open the side door.
- **3.** Close the side door and turn the starter switch key clockwise to lock the side door.

From inside

1. Push the inner handle down to open the side door.

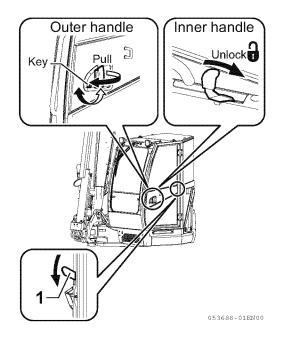
Door lock

Lock the door

- **1.** The door lock is used to hold the side door open.
- **2.** Press the side door into the lock section to latch it open.

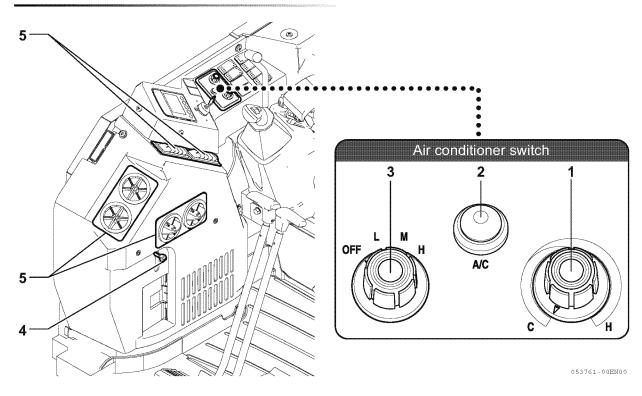
Unlock the door

1. Pull the lever 1 downward to unlatch the side door.



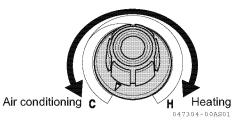
2.16 Handling Air Conditioner

Description of lever and switches for air conditioner



Temperature control dial

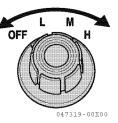
It is used to control the temperature of the air blown by the air conditioner.



2 Fan switch :

It is used to set the air volume at one of the three levels.

- L : Low
- M : Medium
- H : High
- OFF : Stop



Air conditioner switch :

It is used to turn the compressor ON or OFF.

- The compressor is turned OFF.
 - (The lamp goes off.)

The compressor is turned ON.

(The lamp goes on.)

Press the switch in the OFF state to turn the compressor ON, and press it again to turn the compressor OFF. When the fan switch is in the OFF position, the lamp does not go on and the compressor does not work even if the air conditioner switch is turned ON.

Inner and outer air switching lever :

Outer air induction

Move the lever to the outer air induction mark position to induce the outer air to the cab for cooling and heating. It is used when inducing the clean air from outside the cab or defogging the cab window.

Inner air circulation

Move the lever to the inner air circulation mark position to circulate the air only in the cab. It is used when rapidly cooling or heating the cab or the outer air is polluted.

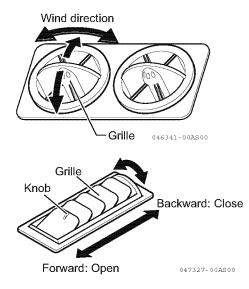
5 Air outlet

The wind direction is adjusted by changing the grille direction.









How to use air conditioner

- The eyes might get sore from smoking when the air conditioner is being used in the cabin. Ventilate the cabin by opening the window slightly when smoking.
- Some mist might blow off with cooled air when the air conditioner is being used in the cabin. This occurs because the water particles in the wet air are frozen and blown out. It is not abnormal.
- When using the air conditioner after parking the machine in the hot weather, ventilate the cabin by opening the door and windows to let the hot air inside go out of the cabin so that the air-conditioning can work efficiently.
- Take care not to cool the inside of the cabin too long because it is not good for the operator's health. Control the air temperature properly.
- If the air conditioner blows no air, the air volume is too low or the cabin is not air conditioned well when the air conditioner is turned on, ask your dealer to check the air conditioner. If you keep using the air conditioner in such an abnormal state, it will cause damage to the fan motor or the compressor.
- Even in the seasons when the air conditioner is not used, operate the air conditioner for a few minutes once or twice every two or three weeks. That prevents the rotating parts such as the compressor from running out of oil, which prevents malfunction of the parts in turn.

Air conditioning

- **1.** Set the fan switch **1** at any of the three levels (Low, Medium or High).
- **2.** Set the temperature control dial **2** to the C position (counterclockwise position).
- **3.** Turn the air conditioner switch **3** ON. (The lamp goes on.)
- Control the temperature inside the cabin properly with the temperature control dial 2 and the fan switch 1 after the inside of the cabin has been cooled off.
- 5. Adjust the air direction with the air outlet grille.
- Set the fan switch for ventilation to apply preload to the inside of the cabin when the air conditioner is not used, so that no dust can come into the cabin easily during operation.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to turn on the air conditioner after starting the engine to prevent excessive force to the compressor etc.

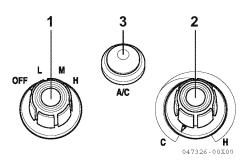
Heating

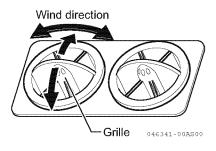
- **1.** Set the fan switch **1** at any of the three levels (Low, Medium or High).
- **2.** Set the temperature control dial **2** to the H position (clockwise position).
- **3.** Turn the air conditioner switch **3** OFF. (The lamp goes off.)

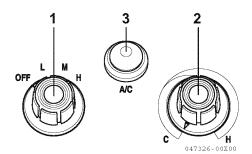
Heating for dehumidification

(In the case that the window glass tends to get fogged in rainy weather in spring or autumn.) With the heating turned on, turn the air conditioner switch **3** ON. (The lamp goes on.)

• If the temperature inside the cabin is low, dehumidification might not work because the compressor does not operate even if the air conditioner switch **3** is turned ON.







Stop

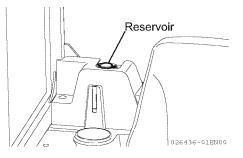
- **1.** Turn the air conditioner switch **3** OFF. (The lamp goes off.)
- 2. Turn the fan switch 1 OFF.
- The air conditioner also stops only by turning the fan switch **1** OFF.

2.17 Replenishment of windshield washer fluid

Replenish windshield washer fluid, whenever necessary, to the reservoir.

CAUTION

- When you fill the reservoir with windshield washer fluid, take care not to allow foreign matter to enter the reservoir.
- Determine the ratio of windshield washer fluid to water on the basis of the lowest past air temperature.



2.18 Fuse

CAUTION

- When replacing a fuse, be sure to turn off the power by turning the starter switch key to the OFF position.
- Using the wrong fuse or shorting out a fuse holder could damage the gauges, the electrical equipment and the wiring due to overheating.
- If a new fuse blows out immediately after replacement, there may be a problem with the electrical system. Ask your dealer for assistance.

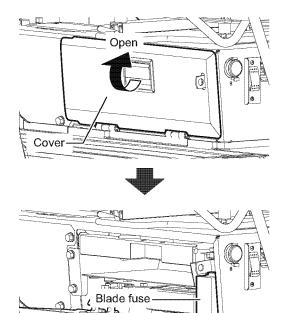
The following two types of fuses are used in the electrical wiring circuit

Blade fuse

- Protect the electrical equipment from overcurrent which exceeds the allowable limit of the electrical equipment.
- Protect the wiring from overcurrent which exceeds the allowable limit of the wiring due to a problem with the electrical equipment.

Slow-blow fuse

• Protect the electrical equipment and the wiring from a burnout caused by overcurrent which flows in the circuit for large-capacity current when a problem occurs (such as short-circuit due to breaking of wire).



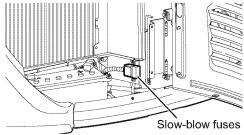
053760-00EN00

Position of the fuse

Blade fuse

It is installed on the front right of the seat mount. Slow-blow fuses

It is installed on the right of battery inside the bonnet R.



035594-01EN00

Replacing the fuses

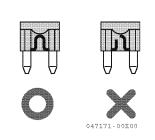
If the electrical equipment does not operate, the fuse may have been blown out. Follow the procedure below:

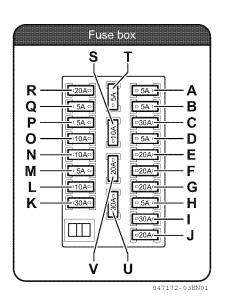
- 1. Set the starter switch at the "OFF" position.
- 2. Remove the fuse box cover.
- **3.** If the fuse is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse of rated capacity.

Symbol	Fuse capacity (A)	Circuit name
А	5	Start Signal
В	5	Starter Switch
С	30	Power
D	5	ECU2
E	20	EGR
F	20	Air Conditioner
G	20	Engine ECU
н	5	LCD Monitor
I	30	Power Output
J	20	Condenser Fan
К	30	Work Light
L	10	ECU1
М	5	Travel/Relay
N	10	PTO/Quick Coupler
0	10	Security
Р	5	ECU2 Acc
Q	5	Engine
R	20	Wiper
S	10	Spare
Т	5	
U	30	
V	20	

The oblique character) parts:

Applicable to models with the relevant equipment.





■ Slow-blow fuse

When the slow-blow fuse is damaged, contact your dealer.

When replacing a slow-blow fuse secured with a bolt, tighten the bolt to the specified torque after installing a new fuse.

Tightening torques for bolts
 M5: 2.1 to 2.9 ft•lbf (2.9 to 3.9 N•m)
 M6: 3.6 to 4.4 ft•lbf (4.9 to 5.9 N•m)

2.19 External power socket

It is the socket that can be used as a power for electronic products.

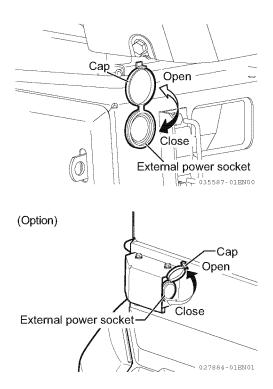
Comply the following conditions for use:

• It can be used when the starter switch key is in the "ON" position.

Use the electronic products with 12 V specification and the maximum 120 W (10 A) or below.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to close the cover when the external power is not in use. Not closing the cover may cause the intrusion of foreign matter.
- The prolonged use of battery in the engine stop condition will cause the dead battery.



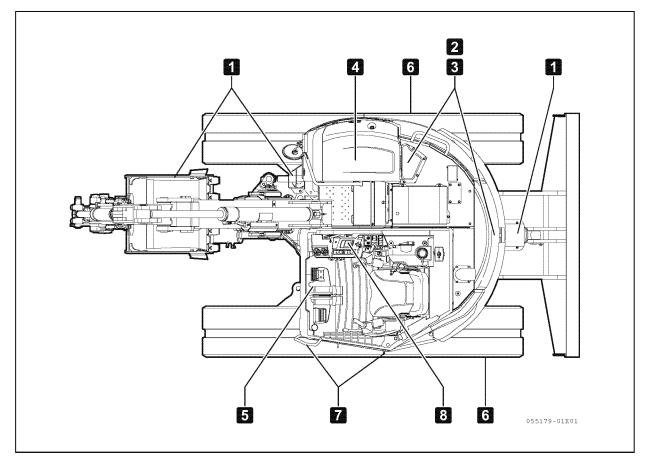
3. Operating Instructions

3.1 Checking before starting the engine

Walking check (visual inspection) around the machine

- If there are any combustibles in any heat build-up areas, or if there are any fuel and/ or oil leaks, a fire can result.
- Check for possible fire causes carefully. If there is anything abnormal, be sure to take corrective action or contact your dealer.

Before starting the engine, visually check the outside and underside of the machine as follows: Check bolts and nuts for loose connections; check the fuel, oil, and water for leaks; and also check the implement and the hydraulic system to see that they are operating properly. In addition, check the electrical wiring for loose connections and for dust deposits in the heat build-up areas. Check the following points before initial start-up for the day.



1 Checking the implement, hydraulic cylinders, linkages, and hoses for damage, wear and loose connections

Check the implement, hydraulic cylinders, linkages, and hoses for damage, wear and loose connections. If any abnormality is found, take corrective action.

2 Removing dust deposits from around the engine, battery, and radiator

Check to confirm that there are no dust deposits or other combustibles around the engine, on the radiator, or in other heat build-up areas, such as the muffler. If there are any, remove them.

Checking the engine and its accessories for oil or water leakage

Check the engine for oil leakage and the cooling water system for water leakage. If oil or water leakage is found, take corrective action.

Checking the hydraulic system, hydraulic oil tank, hoses, and joints for oil leakage Check for oil leakage. If oil leakage is found, take corrective action.

Checking the grease piping for grease leakage

Check for grease leakage or ooze. If grease leakage or ooze is found, take corrective action.

6 Checking the undercarriage (crawler, sprockets, and idlers) for breakage, wear, loose bolts, and oil leakage around the rollers

If any breakage or wear is found, correct it. Retighten the bolts if necessary. If oil leakage is found, take corrective action.

7 Checking the handrails and steps for breakage and loose bolts

If any breakage is found, take corrective action. Retighten the bolts if necessary.

Checking the LCD monitor for breakage and loose bolts

Check the LCD monitor for breakage and loose bolts. If any abnormality is found, replace the LCD monitor with a new one, or retighten the bolts if necessary. Clean the surfaces of the LCD monitor.

Checking before start-up

Check the following points before initial start-up for the day.

Checking and replenishing the cooling water

WARNING

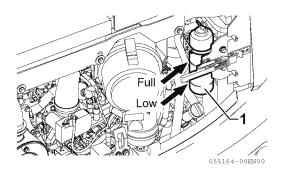
- Do not remove the fill cap from the radiator unless supplying the cooling water.
- Check the cooling water level in the subtank when the engine is cool.
- 1. Open the engine hood. Then check that the cooling water level in the sub-tank 1 (illustrated at the right figure) is between the FULL and LOW marks. If the water level is below the LOW mark, refill the sub-tank up to the FULL mark through the water supply port of the sub-tank 1.

For the cooling water to be used, refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.

- 2. After replenishing, securely tighten the cap.
- **3.** If the sub-tank is empty, check it for water leakage, and then, check the water level in the radiator.

If the water level is low, refill the radiator first, then refill the sub-tank.

4. If the cooling water level is appropriate, close the engine hood.



■ Checking and draining the pre-filter

A WARNING

- Keep sparks flames and lit cigarettes away.
- Drain and replace the pre-filter element after engine has cooled down.
- Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surface or electrical components could cause a fire.

Things to prepare

- · Container for fuel waste
- 1. Open the engine hood.
- 2. Check the pre-filter to see whether the float (red ring) 3 has sunk down to the cup 4 bottom and a contamination has not mixed into the oil.

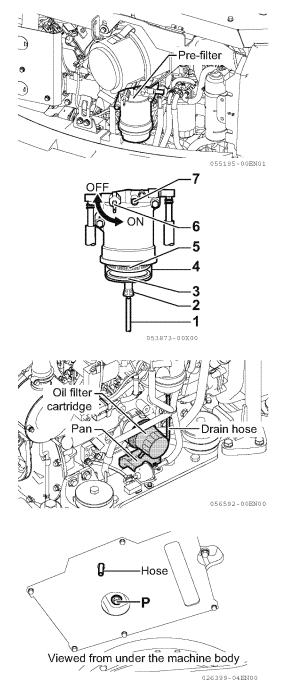
If the float **3** has sunk down to the cup **4** bottom, no water has mixed into the oil; if the float **3** is floating in the cup **4**, water is mixed into the oil under the float **3**.

If the water or the contamination is found in the cup **4**, remove it as the procedure below.

- **3.** Put end of the drain hose **1** on the pan equipped under the engine oil filter, and place the container for fuel waste under the hose.
- 4. Turn the fuel cock 6 to the OFF position.
- **5.** Loosen the drain cock **2** about 4 turns, and drain the water and contamination.

If no water drips when the pre-filter drain cock **2** is opened, loosen the air bleeder bolt **7** on the top of the pre-filter by using a screwdriver to turn it counterclockwise 2 to 3 turns. After draining the pre-filter, be sure to tighten the air bleeder bolt **7**.

- 6. Hand-tighten the drain cock 2.
- **7.** Wipe off the water and fuel adhered to the drain hose **1**.
- 8. Turn the fuel cock 6 to the ON position.
- **9.** After draining, release the air. (Refer to page 306)
- 10. Check the fuel leak.
- 11. Close the engine hood.



OPERATION

■ Checking and replenishing the engine oil

A WARNING

• At operating temperature, oil and dipstick areas are hot.

Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact the skin, to prevent bodily injury.

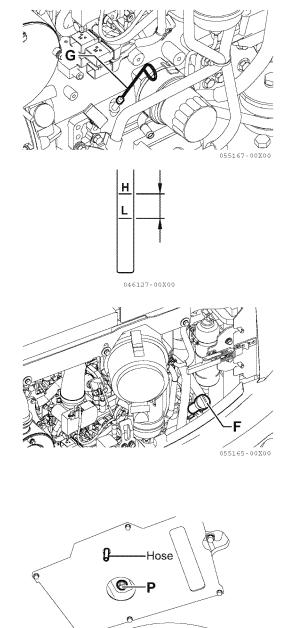
- Check oil level and replenish oil after engine has cooled down.
- **1.** Open the engine hood and securely lock it in that position with the stopper rod.
- **2.** Pick up the dipstick **G** and wipe it with a rag to remove oil deposits.
- **3.** Fully insert the dipstick **G** into the dipstick tube, then draw it out.
- 4. If the dipstick G is wet above the midpoint between the H and L marks, the engine oil level is appropriate. If the oil level is below the midpoint between the H and L marks, add engine oil through the oil supply port F. For the quality of the engine oil to be used, refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.
- If the engine oil level is above the H mark, remove the excessive amount of oil through the drain plug P, then recheck the engine oil level.
- **6.** After verifying that the amount of engine oil is appropriate, securely retighten the oil supply port cap and close the engine hood.

Note :

When checking the engine oil level after starting up the engine, stop the engine and allow more than 15 minutes for the engine to cool down.

If the machine is slanted, reposition the machine to ensure it is level before checking the engine oil level.

Keep in mind that the excess engine oil must not be disposed of on the ground or the road.



Viewed from under the machine body

026399-04EN00

■ Checking and replenishing the fuel in the fuel tank

A WARNING

Be careful not to overfill the fuel tank because it could cause a fire. If the tank is overfilled, completely wipe off the spilled fuel.

▲ CAUTION

- Do not remove the strainer from the fuel supply port of the fuel tank when supplying fuel.
- Be careful not to allow any water that may be in the fuel container or dirt on the refueling equipment to enter the fuel tank.
- Turn the starter switch key to the "ON" position, and check the fuel level. Open the cover, and supply fuel to the fuel supply port.

When the fuel meter and caution lamp flash, approximately 5.3 Gals. (20 L) of fuel is left in the tank.

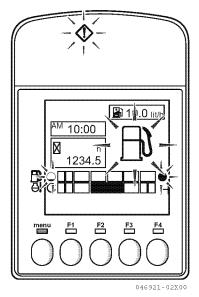
Fuel tank capacity : 30.4 Gals. (115 L)

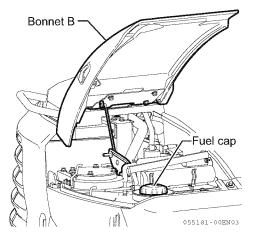
For the quality of the fuel to be used, refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.

2. After refueling, securely retighten the fuel supply port cap and close the cover.

Note:

Clogging the breather of fuel supply port cap may cause the pressure in the fuel tank to decrease, resulting in stoppage of fuel supply to the engine. If the fuel supply port cap is contaminated, clean the cap.





Checking and replenishing the hydraulic oil tank

WARNING

When removing the plug of the oil supply port, slowly loosen it to gradually relieve the internal pressure in the tank, or oil may spurt from the tank.

1. Park the machine as illustrated in the figure at the right.

When the machine is not in that posture, start the engine, retract the bucket and arm cylinders to their stroke ends at low speed, lower the boom until the bucket teeth contact the ground, lower the blade to the ground, and stop the engine.

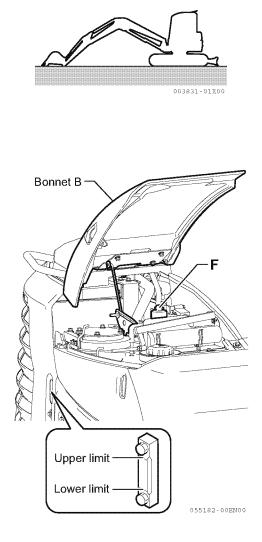
2. Check the oil level by reading the oil level gauge on the side of the tank. Confirm that the oil level is between the upper and lower limit marks.

IMPORTANT

Do not replenish hydraulic oil above the upper limit mark on the oil level gauge. An excessive amount of hydraulic oil may damage the hydraulic system by placing stress on its components, causing a dangerous high-pressure leak.

 Open the bonnet B. Remove the plug of the oil supply port F and add oil if the oil level is below the lower limit.

For the quality of the oil to be used, refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.



150 3.Operating Instructions

Note :

Note that the oil level varies with the oil temperature.

When reading the oil level, follow these guidelines:

- Before start-up, the oil level gauge should read at or near the midpoint of the gauge scale [oil temperature : 50 to 86°F (10 to 30°C)].
- During normal operation, the oil level gauge should read at or near the upper limit mark of the gauge scale

[oil temperature : 122 to 176°F (50 to 80°C)].

Checking and adjusting the fan belt tension

DANGER

- Stop the engine, take out the starter switch key, and attach the "SERVICING IN PROG-RESS" tag to a control lever.
- The fan belt is hot immediately after the engine is stopped.

Do not adjust the fan belt tension immediately after stopping the engine.

• Adjust the fan belt tension after all of the parts of the engine have fully cooled down.

Checking

- 1. Open the cover 1.
- 2. Press down on the fan belt 2 between the crankshaft pulley 3 and the generator pulley 4 with a finger, to check the fan belt tension. Pressing force:

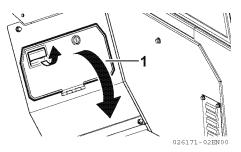
Approximately 22.1 lbs. (98.1 N)

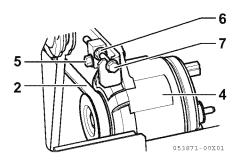
Correct slack: 0.39 to 0.55 in. (10 to 14 mm)

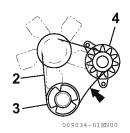
- **3.** Adjust the tension or replace the fan belt if necessary.
- 4. When the tension is proper, close the cover.

Adjustment

- Prepare the wooden bar (the handle of a hammer or the like)
- 1. Open the cover 1.
- Loosen the mounting bolts 5 of the generator
 4.
- 3. Loosen the lock nut 6 of the adjuster.
- 4. Turn the adjuster bolt 7 and move the generator 4 so that the generator fan belt will be slacked approximately 0.39 to 0.55 in. (10 to 14 mm) with a pressing load of 72.3 ft•lbf (98.1N•m).
- **5.** Retighten the mounting bolt **5** to secure the generator **2**.
- 6. Retighten the lock nut 6 to secure the adjuster bolt 7.







152 3.Operating Instructions

- 7. Check the pulleys, the V-groove, and the fan belt 2 for damage, and check to see that the fan belt 2 does not touch the bottom of the Vgroove.
- 8. If the fan belt 2 cannot be adjusted since it has lost its elasticity or if it is damaged or cracked, replace the fan belt 2 with a new one.

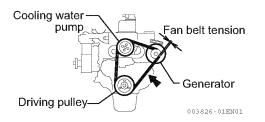
If a new fan belt has been installed, be sure to adjust the belt tension within the specified range for new fan belt tension shown below and then run the engine for at least five minutes. After that, check again whether the belt tension is within the specified range for used fan belt tension shown blow. Readjust the belt tension, if necessary.

• New fan belt tension:

0.31 to 0.47 in. (8 to 12 mm)

Used fan belt tension:
0.39 to 0.55 in. (10 to 14 mm)

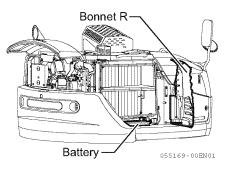
[Fan belt size]	(Inch)	
	Size	
Fan belt	A48	



Checking and replenishing the battery electrolyte

DANGER

- The battery generates flammable gas and can cause a fire and an explosion. Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from the battery.
- Battery electrolyte is strong acid. To avoid serious injury, do not allow the electrolyte to contact your skin or splash into your eyes.
- Always wear safety goggles and protective clothing, when adding electrolyte.
- Do not use the machine with the battery which is short of battery electrolyte. The shortage of battery electrolyte not only will reduce the life of the battery but also could cause an explosion.
- **1.** Open the bonnet R to check the electrolyte level. The level must be between the upper and lower level marks.
- **2.** If the electrolyte level is lower than the lower level mark, replenish it.

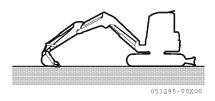


■ Greasing

IMPORTANT

Grease the fittings thoroughly after washing the machine or after operation in rain, on soft ground, or in muddy water.

1. Put the bucket and the blade on the ground and stop the engine.



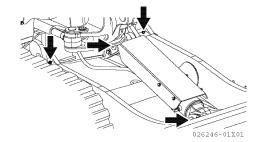
- 2. Clean the grease nipples indicated by arrows in the figures at the right and grease them with a grease gun.
- **3.** After greasing, wipe off any excess that remains.

For greasing for quick coupler type, refer to Section " Maintenance" on page 206.

396-00X01 056397-00X01 027871-01X01 53847-00X00 刮机 01X01 026244-01X03 026245-01X01

Implement

Blade



■ Checking the electrical equipment

CAUTION

If a fuse blows out frequently, contact your dealer for assistance.

Check fuses for damage, wiring for poor connections or short circuits, and battery terminals for corrosion or loose fits. Take corrective action.

Check the following items after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position.

• Check the monitor functions.

- Check the functions of LCD monitor (hour meter, water temp. meter and fuel meter).
- Check LED lamps on the LCD monitor.
- Check that all switches function correctly and all lamps light correctly.
- · Check the work lights.
- Check the horn.
- Check the auto deceleration function.
- Check the eco mode function.
- Check the wiper function.
- Check the room lamp for lighting.
- Check the air conditioner function

• Check the travel alarm function.

• To check the travel alarm function, push or pull the travel levers after the lock lever have been unlocked.

Operating and checking instructions before starting up the engine

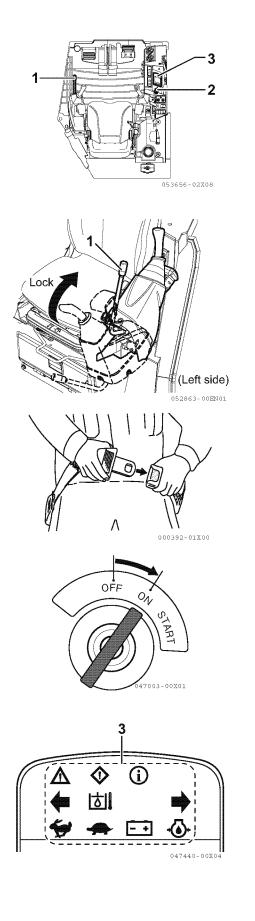
A WARNING

- Accidentally operating a control lever can cause the machine to move suddenly, possibly causing a serious accident.
- When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place the lock lever securely in the lock position.
- 1. Check that the lock lever 1 is in the lock position.
- 2. Check that all other levers are in their appropriate positions.

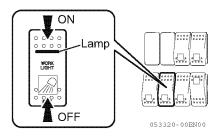
3. Fasten the seatbelt snugly.

- 4. Insert the starter switch key into the starter switch 2 and set it to the "ON" position. Then check the following points:
 - 1-The buzzer will sound, and LED lamps 3 on the LCD monitor will go on. After 2 seconds, the buzzer and LED lamps except for the following lamps will turn off.
 - Engine oil pressure lamp
 - Battery charge lamp

If any of the alarm lamps do not go on or the buzzer does not sound, it may mean that an alarm lamp has blown out or is broken. Take corrective action, or consult your dealer for assistance.



2-Turn the light switch "ON" to see whether the headlights will go on. If either or both of them do not go on, the lamp(s) might have blown out or might be broken. Take corrective action, or consult your dealer for assistance.



3.2 Starting up the engine

Normal start-up

A WARNING

- First check that there are no people or obstacles around the machine. Then sound the horn and start the engine.
- Be sure that you are seated on the opera-
- tor's seat when starting the engine.
- When starting the engine in an enclosed place, be sure that there is adequate ventilation so that the exhaust gases can escape.
- 1. Turn the engine control dial 1 to the RUN direction.

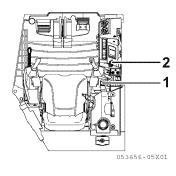
 Set the starter switch key in the starter switch 2 to the "START" position. The engine will start.

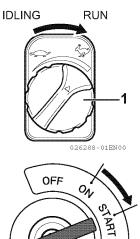
3. After the engine has started, release the starter switch key.

The starter switch key will return to the "ON" position by itself.

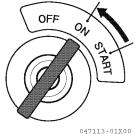
Note :

When the engine is warm, the engine can start up even if the accelerator lever is left in the "IDLING" position.





047112-01X00



047113-01X00

IMPORTANT

To protect the starter motor and the battery:

- Do not keep the starter switch key in the "START" position for more than 10 seconds.
- If the engine fails to start, do not attempt to start the engine immediately again, but set the switch to the "OFF" position and wait for approximately 30 seconds, then start the engine again.

10 second	ls 30) seconds	10 seconds	
Turn on th starter mot		Pause	Turn on the starter motor	
Absolutely required pause				
(The starter switch is in the "OFF" position)				
			000398-01EN00	

Starting the engine in cold weather

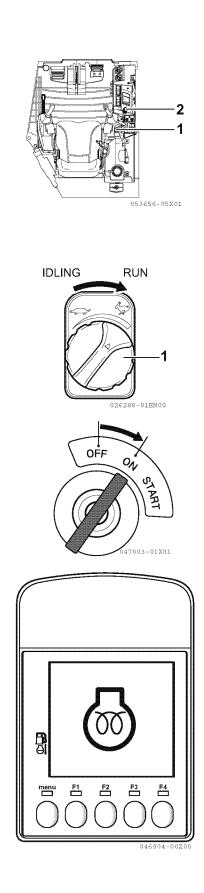
A WARNING

- First check that there are no people or obstacles around the machine. Then sound the horn and start the engine.
- Be sure that you are seated on the operator's seat when starting the engine.
- When starting the engine in an enclosed place, be sure that there is adequate ventilation so that the exhaust gases can escape.

To start the engine when the outside air temperature is low, follow the steps below:

- 1. Turn the engine control dial 1 to the RUN direction.
- 2. Turn the key in the starter switch 2 to the "ON" position and hold it in the position. An icon indicating that the engine glow plug is operating appears on the LCD monitor and disappears when the engine has been warmed up. Be sure to confirm that the icon has disap-

peared before starting the engine.



3. Turn the starter switch key in the starter switch2 to the "START" position to start the engine.

4. After the engine has started, release the starter switch key.

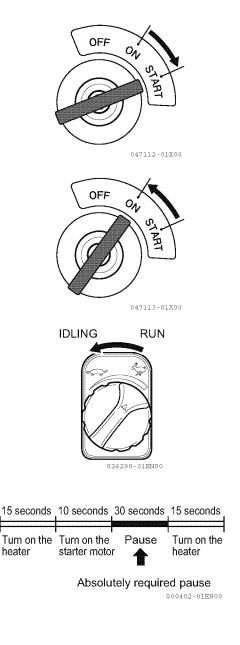
The starter switch key will return to the "ON" position by itself.

5. When the engine speed has increased, turn the engine control dial to the IDLING position.

IMPORTANT

To protect the starter motor and the battery:

- Do not keep the starter switch key in the "START" position for more than 10 seconds.
- If the engine fails to start, do not start the engine immediately again, but set the switch to the "OFF" position and wait for approximately 30 seconds, then start the engine again.
- Traveling or operating the machine without adequate warming in cold weather may adversely affect the machine performance.



3.3 Operating and checking instructions after starting the engine

A WARNING

• Emergency stop.

If abnormal operation occurs, turn the starter switch key to the "OFF" position, to shut off the electrical system and the engine. Then ask your dealer to check the machine.

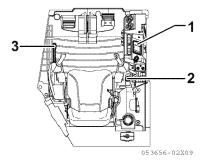
• Be sure to warm up the engine. If you operate the implement without full warm-up, the machine may not respond or operate properly, especially in cold weather.

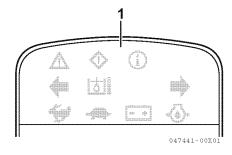
IMPORTANT

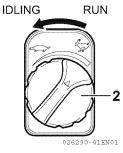
- The proper hydraulic oil temperature is between 122°F and 176°F (50°C and 80°C). If you have to operate the machine at a low hydraulic oil temperature, increase the hydraulic oil temperature to about 68°F (20°C) before operating the implement.
- In the event that you have to operate any control lever at a temperature lower than 68°F (20°C), operate it gently.
- Do not accelerate the engine rapidly until the engine warms up.

After starting the engine, do not start operating the machine immediately but follow this procedure:

- **1.** Idle the engine to check that LED lamps **1** on the LCD monitor is off.
- 2. Turn the engine control dial 2 to the IDLING and RUN position, and run the engine with no load at medium speed for approximately five minutes.







- **3.** Unlock the lock lever **3**, and lift the bucket from the ground.
- **4.** Operate the bucket and arm control levers slowly to move the bucket and arm cylinders to their stroke ends.

Operate the bucket for thirty seconds and the arm for thirty seconds alternately for approximately five minutes to increase the hydraulic oil temperature to 68°F (20°C).

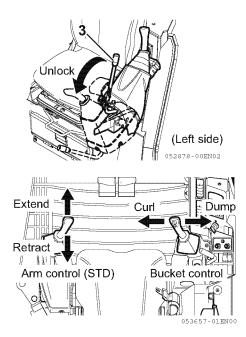
IMPORTANT

When moving the implement, be careful not to bump it against the machine or the ground.

- **5.** After warming up the engine, check that the LED lamps on the LCD monitor have turned off and no errors are displayed on the LCD screen. If there are any problems, take necessary corrective action.
- **6.** Check the exhaust gas color, the machine noise, and the vibration level for abnormality. If something is abnormal, take corrective action.

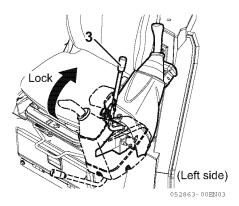
Note:

- White smoke may be emitted from the exhaust pipe due to water vapor accumulation shortly after the engine starts but will normally disappear once the engine has warmed up.
- Because the engine of this model is furnished with a DPF, exhaust odor is different from that of conventional diesel engines.



- **7.** Set the lock lever **3** to the "LOCK" position to confirm that the implement cannot be operated and the upperstructure cannot be swung with the left and right control levers.
- 8. Unlock the lock lever and operate the control levers to check that the implement can be operated and the upperstructure can be swung normally. If something is abnormal, take corrective action.
- **9.** Check that the swing brake valve operates normally. If something is abnormal, take corrective action.
- **10.** Check that no abnormal noise is heard from the hydraulic pump. If any abnormal noise is heard, take corrective action.

Ask your dealer to resolve any problems identified in steps **1** to **10** above.



3.4 Traveling

Traveling forward

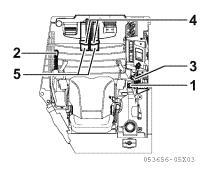
A WARNING

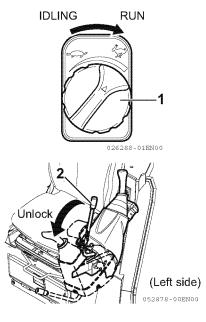
• Always check the position of the blade before operating the travel levers and pedals.

When the blade is in the rear, the travel levers and pedals operate in reverse of normal operation.

- A signal person should be in attendance to give signals at sites which are dangerous or not clearly in view of the operator.
- Clear all people from the working area.
- Sound the horn before beginning travel, to alert the people near the machine.
- Clear obstacles from the path of the machine.
- Do not operate the travel levers and pedals rapidly while the engine is running at high speed. Otherwise, the machine may move unexpectedly, causing a serious accident.
- **1.** Turn the engine control dial **1** to the RUN direction and increase the engine speed.

2. Unlock the lock lever 2, and retract the implement to raise it 16 to 20 in. (40 to 50 cm) above the ground.



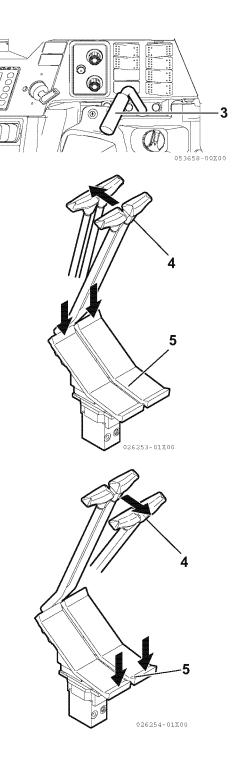


166 3.Operating Instructions

3. Pull back the blade lever 3 to raise the blade.

- **4.** Operate the left and right travel levers **4** or pedals **5** as follows:
 - When the blade is in the front of the machine: Slowly push the travel levers **4** forward or step on the front of the pedals **5** to move the machine forward.

• When the blade is in the rear of the machine: Slowly pull the travel levers **4** back or step on the rear of the pedals **5** to move the machine forward.



Traveling in reverse

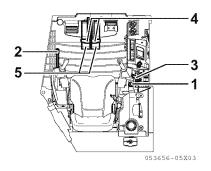
A WARNING

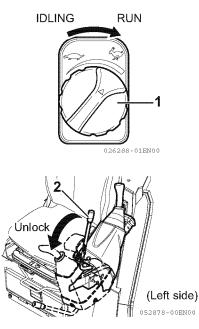
• Always check the position of the blade before operating the travel levers and pedals.

When the blade is in the rear of the machine, the travel levers and pedals operate in reverse of normal operation.

- A signal person should be in attendance to give signals at sites which are dangerous or not clearly in view of the operator.
- Clear all people from the working area.
- Sound the horn before beginning travel to alert the people near the machine.
- Clear obstacles from the path of the machine.
- There is a blind spot behind the machine. Make sure that no people are in the blind spot before traveling backwards.
- Do not operate the travel levers and pedals rapidly while the engine is running at high speed. Otherwise, the machine may move unexpectedly, causing a serious accident.
- **1.** Turn the engine control dial **1** to the RUN direction and increase the engine speed.

2. Unlock the lock lever 2, and retract the implement to raise it 16 to 20 in. (40 to 50 cm) above the ground.





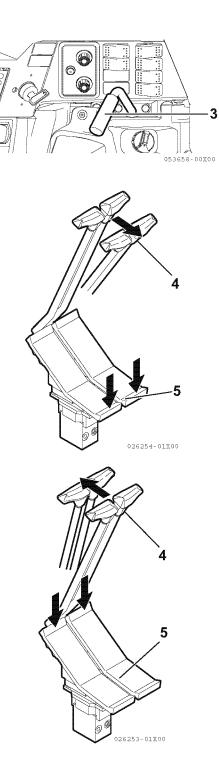
168 3.Operating Instructions

3. Pull back the blade lever 3 to raise the blade.

4. Operate the left and right travel levers **4** or pedals **5** as follows:

When the blade is in the front of the machine: Slowly pull the travel levers **4** back or step on the rear of the pedals **5** to move the machine backward.

• When the blade is in the rear of the machine: Slowly push the travel levers **4** forward or step on the front of the pedals **5** to move the machine backward.



3.5 Steering

Steering (turning the machine)

WARNING

Always check the position of the blade before operating the travel levers.

When the blade is in the rear, the travel levers operate in reverse of normal operation.

Do not use the travel pedals to steer the machine, or the machine may not be controlled expectedly, causing a serious accident.

To steer the machine, operate the travel levers only.

Do not turn the machine too sharply. Before spinturning, always stop the machine first.

Operate the two travel levers 1 as follows:

Steering the machine when it is not traveling

To turn left, push the right travel lever forward and start traveling forward to the left. Pull the right travel lever back and start traveling in reverse to the left.

Note:

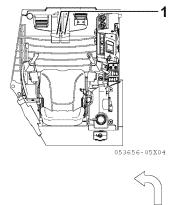
To turn right, operate the left travel lever in the same manner as above.

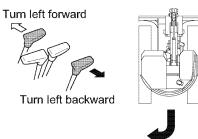
Steering the machine while traveling (the left and right travel levers are both tilted in the same direction)

To turn left, return the left travel lever to the neutral position.

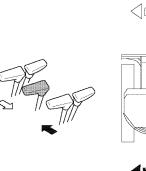
Note :

To turn right, return the right travel lever to the neutral position.





003852-01EN00



003853-01X00

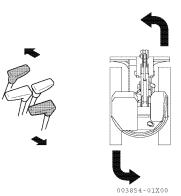
170 3.Operating Instructions

Spin-turning the machine when it is not traveling

To spin-turn left, push the right travel lever forward while pulling the left travel lever back.

Note :

To spin-turn right, push the left travel lever forward while pulling the right travel lever back.



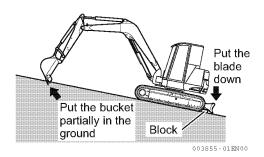
3.6 Stopping the machine

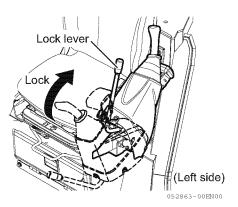
Do not stop the machine suddenly but provide a safety margin.

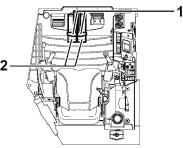
- Park on solid, level ground.
- Do not park on a slope. If it is unavoidable to park on a slope, place solid blocks of wood behind the crawlers, place the blade on the ground, and dig the bucket into the ground.

A WARNING

- Do not touch the control levers and pedals accidentally. Otherwise, the implement or the machine may move unexpectedly, causing serious bodily injury.
- Whenever leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place the lock lever securely in the lock position and remove the starter switch key.
- Set the right and left travel levers 1 or pedals 2 to the neutral position to stop the machine.







053656-05X05

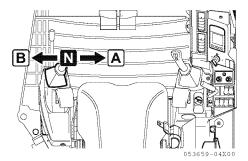


3.7 Swinging the upperstructure

Before swinging, make sure that there are no people or obstacles within the swing range of the implement or the machine tail.

To swing the upperstructure, operate the left control lever as illustrated in the figure at the right.

- A : Swing right
- B : Swing left



3.8 Operating the implement

A WARNING

- Check the area around the machine for safety and sound the horn before beginning to operate the machine.
- The setting of the pattern change lever alters control lever operation. Always chose the pattern (STD VS. OPT) that you prefer to use.
- To prevent accidental injury, never operate the Excavator before confirming the setting of the pattern change lever.

Operate the machine using the right and left control levers, the boom swing pedal and the blade lever.

<STD Pattern>

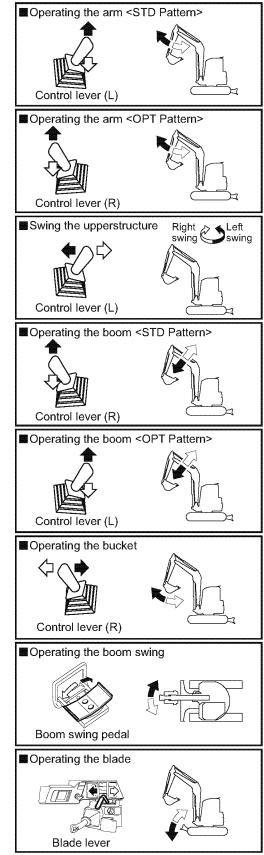
- Control lever (L): Operates arm and upperstructure swing.
- Control lever (R): Operates boom and bucket.

<OPT Pattern>

- Control lever (L): Operates boom and upperstructure swing.
- Control lever (R): Operates arm and bucket.
- Boom swing pedal: Operates boom swing.
- Blade lever: Operates blade.

The relationships between the operation of the control levers, the boom swing pedal and the movement of the implement are shown in the illustrations on the right.

On releasing the control levers and the boom swing pedal, they will return to their neutral positions and the implement will stop moving.



003857-01EN00

3.9 Precautions for operating the implement

A WARNING

- Do not operate the implement control levers while traveling. Stop traveling first and then operate the implement.
- Do not operate the implement on any rocky surface.

■ Do not use the implement's swing force Do not level the ground or break down a wall by the use of swing force, and do not dig the bucket teeth into the ground while swinging. Doing these may cause the implement to be damaged.

■ Do not use the implement's travel force

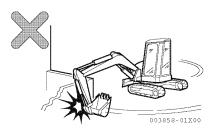
Do not excavate the ground by the use of travel force with the bucket teeth in contact with the ground. Doing this may cause excessive force to be imposed on the rear of the machine, shortening the machine life.

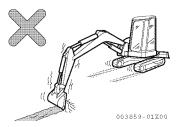
Take care not to operate the hydraulic cylinder to the stroke end

Operating the hydraulic cylinder to the stroke end may impose an undue force on the stopper in the hydraulic cylinder, shortening the implement life. Operate with a small safety margin.

■ Do not operate the implement by the using the dropping force of the bucket

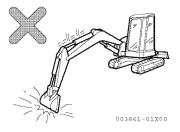
Do not excavate the ground by using the dropping force of the bucket as a pickaxe or pile driver. Doing this may cause excessive force to be imposed on the rear of the machine, shortening the machine life and possibly causing a serious accident.





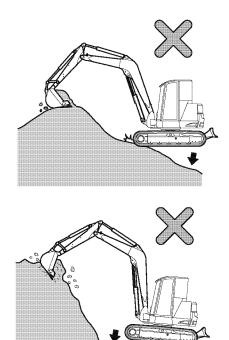


003860-01EN00



Do not operate the implement by using the dropping force of the machine

Do not excavate the ground by using the dropping force of the machine.



Excavating a hard rock

It is recommended that a hard rock first be broken into small pieces by other means. Doing so will prevent damage to the machine and will increase economic efficiency.

Do not bump the blade against a large rock or boulder

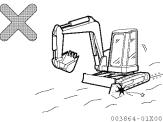
Never bump the blade against a large rock or boulder. Doing so may cause the blade or the hydraulic cylinder to be damaged.

Be careful when retracting the implement

When retracting the implement for travel or transport, be careful that the bucket and the blade never bump against each other.

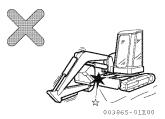
Support the blade on both sides

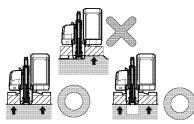
When you use the blade as an outrigger, support the blade on both sides.





003862-01X00



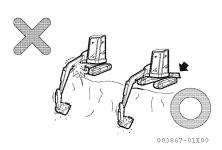


003866-01X00

Be careful not to bump the blade when excavating

When excavating the ground with the blade in front, never let the blade bump against the boom cylinder.

Place the blade in the rear, when it is not being used.



3.10 Precautions for working

Precautions for traveling

Driving over a stone or a stump subjects the machine (especially undercarriage) to a shock, which may cause damage to the machine.

Avoid such obstacles by driving around them, or removing them.

If driving over them is unavoidable, reduce speed, hold the implement close to the ground, and drive over the obstacles with the center of the track shoes.

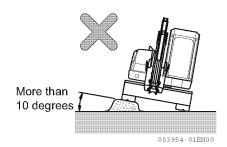
■ Allowable water depth

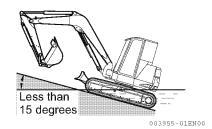
IMPORTANT

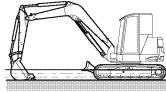
When driving out of water, if the machine climbs a slope at an angle of more than 15 degrees, the rear of the upperstructure may submerge too deeply in the water, which may damage the radiator fan. Avoid this if possible when driving out of water.

The maximum water depth in which the machine can be used is up to the center of the carrier roller. Apply a generous amount of grease to the moving parts that have been submerged in the water for a long time until the used grease is extruded out of the bearings.

Wipe away the extruded used grease.







003956-02X00

3.11 Precautions for going up and down a slope

A WARNING

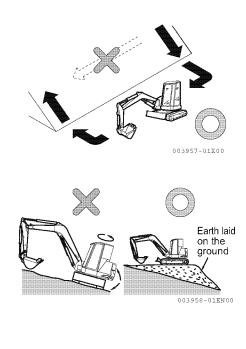
- When traveling on a slope, place the implement in the direction of travel and raise the bucket 8 to 12 in. (20 to 30 cm) above the ground.
- When driving over obstacles such as foot paths, hold the implement close to the ground and drive the machine slowly.
- Never turn on or traverse a slope.
 Descend to flat ground to make a course change.
- If the machine is starting to slip or you feel that the machine is unstable, place the bucket on the ground and stop the machine at once.
- Recognize that the machine may roll over when swinging the upperstructure or operating the implement on a slope.

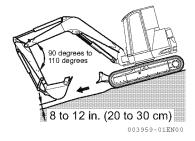
Do not swing the upperstructure toward the downward side of the slope with a load in the bucket.

If swinging is unavoidable, first lay earth on the slope to maintain the machine as horizontal as possible, then swing the upperstructure.

- Do not travel on a slope of 20 degrees or more, as the machine may upset.
- 1. Go down slopes at low speed, using the travel levers and accelerator lever to control your speed.

When going down a slope, drive the machine at low engine speed and position the implement as shown in the figure on the right.





2. When climbing a slope, drive the machine with the implement positioned as shown in the figure on the right.

Braking when going down a slope

When going down a slope, you can automatically brake the machine by setting the travel levers to the neutral position.

■ When the crawler is slipping

If you cannot climb a slope by operating the travel levers because the crawler is slipping, retract the arm and use the pull-back power of the implement to help you climb the slope.

■ When the engine stops

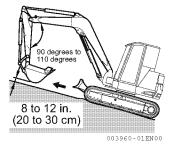
If the engine stops while climbing a slope, set the travel levers to the neutral position, stop the machine, and restart the engine.

Precautions for traveling on a slope

Do not open or close the cabin side door on a slope.

Doing this may cause the door to swing open or closed very rapidly.

Be sure to lock the cabin side door in either the open or closed position.



3.12 Escaping from the mud

Carefully operate the machine not to allow it to get mired in mud. If the machine is mired in mud, the machine can escape as follows:

If only one track is mired in the mud

If only one track is mired in the mud, place the bucket on the muddy side, lift the track above the ground, lay a log or a wood block under the track shoe, and raise the bucket to escape.

IMPORTANT

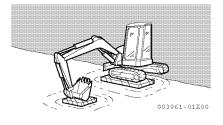
When lifting the machine above the ground with the boom or the arm, press on the ground with the bottom of the bucket. (Do not press on the ground with the bucket teeth.)

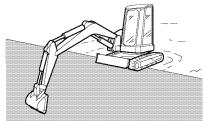
In doing this, the angle between the boom and the arm should be 90 degrees to 110 degrees.

The same procedure described above should be utilized when the bucket is in the reverse position.

If both tracks are mired in the mud

If both tracks are mired in the mud, lay a log or a wood block under the track shoes in the same manner as mentioned above, dig the bucket into the solid ground, retract the arm just as when excavating, and push the travel levers forward to escape from the mud.





03962-01X0

3.13 Operations using the bucket

You can greatly widen the range of work described here by using optional attachments.

Backhoe operation

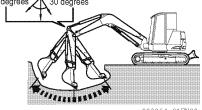
Backhoe operation is suitable for digging the ground below the machine.

Suppose that the machine is operating as illustrated in the figure at the right : a maximum digging force of each cylinder can be obtained when the angle between the bucket cylinder and the bucket arm as well as between the arm cylinder and the arm is maintained at 90 degrees.

When digging, make good use of this angle to increase the operating efficiency.

To excavate the ground efficiently by manipulating the arm, the arm needs to be operated within a range of angles between 45 degrees forward and 30 degrees backwards, as illustrated in the figure at the right. Though the range differs according to the depth of the work, do not move the implement to the cylinder stroke end.

45 degrees 30 degrees



003964-01EN00

Shoveling

Shoveling is suitable for excavating ground that is higher than the machine bottom.

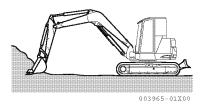
Install the bucket in the reverse position before operating.

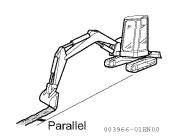
For the procedure for installing the bucket in the reverse position, Refer to Section "3.21 Reversing the bucket without the quick coupler" on page 195.

Ditching

To increase work efficiency, install a suitable bucket for ditching and position the tracks in parallel with the ditch to be made.

To make a wide ditch, first dig the two sides, and then dig the center.

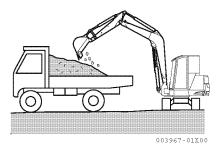




Loading

To increase work efficiency, locate the dump truck at a position where the swing angle of the machine will be minimized and the operator can clearly view the dump truck.

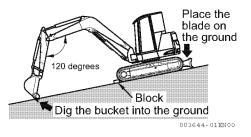
Load earth from the rear of the dump truck, because it can be loaded more easily and in larger amounts than from the side.



3.14 Parking the machine

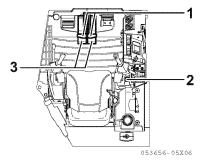
Do not stop the machine suddenly, but try to stop with a safety margin.

- Park on solid, level ground.
- Do not park on a slope. If it is unavoidable to park on a slope, place solid blocks of wood behind the crawlers, place the blade on the ground, and dig the bucket into the ground.



- Do not touch the control levers and pedals accidentally. Otherwise, the implement or the machine may move unexpectedly, causing a serious accident.
- When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place the lock lever securely in the lock position and remove the starter switch key.
- **1.** Set the left and right travel levers **1** or pedals **3** to the neutral position to stop the machine.

2. Turn the engine control dial **2** to the IDLING direction.

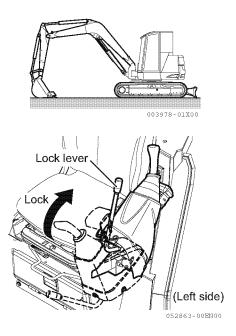






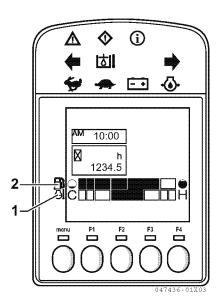
184 3.Operating Instructions

- **3.** Place the bucket on the ground with its bottom surface in contact with the ground.
- **4.** Place the blade on the ground.
- 5. Set the lock lever to the "LOCK" position.



3.15 Inspection requirements after completing operation

Check the water temp. meter **1** and LED lamps on LCD monitor, and also check the residual quantity of fuel with the fuel meter **2**.



3.16 Stopping the engine

IMPORTANT

- Stopping the engine after rotation at high speed may shorten the engine life. Do not stop the engine suddenly except in case of emergency.
- If the engine is overheated, do not stop the engine immediately. Gradually lower the engine temperature by rotating the engine at medium rotational speed before stopping the engine.

1. Idle the engine for approximately five minutes with no load.

(The engine temperature gradually lowers.)



- 2. To stop the engine, turn the starter switch key1 to the "OFF" position.
- **3.** Take the starter switch key out of the starter switch **1**.

Note:

The swing motor brake will engage automatically when the engine stops.

3.17 Inspection requirements after stopping the engine

- Check oil and water for leaks, and visually inspect the implement, the machine, and the undercarriage by walking around them.
 If there are any leaks of oil or water, or any observed abnormality, take corrective action.
- 2. Completely fill the fuel oil tank.
- **3.** Confirm that the engine compartment is free of any foreign matter.

Combustibles or dust in the engine compartment may cause a fire. Remove them, if any.

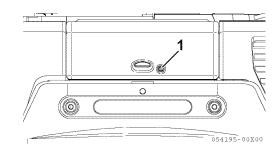
4. Remove mud adhering to the undercarriage of the machine.

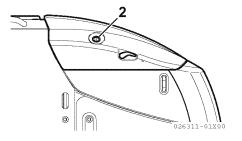
3.18 Locking

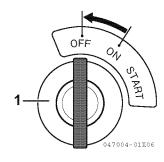
Make sure that you lock the following parts :

1. Engine hood

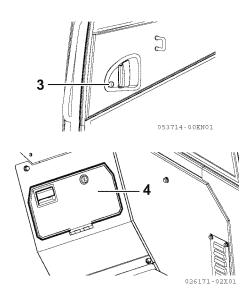
2. Bonnet B







3. Side door (for cabin)



4. Inspection cover

Note :

The starter switch key is used to lock all of the items mentioned above.

3.19 Handling the rubber crawlers

Using the rubber crawlers properly

Rubber crawlers have some advantages over steel crawlers.

However, you cannot take full advantage of them if you use them in the same manner as steel ones. Use care in operating with rubber crawlers in accord with the conditions of the work site and the type of work.

Comparison Table of Rubber and Steel Crawlers

	Rubber	Steel
Low vibration	\diamond	
Smooth travel	\diamond	0
Silent travel	\diamond	
Less damage to paved roads	\diamond	
Simple handling	\diamond	
Susceptibility to damage (strength)		\diamond
Tractive force	\diamond	\diamond

♦ : Excellent

O : Good

 \Box : Ordinary

Rubber crawlers have many advantages inherent in the unique properties of the material. On the other hand, however, they are low in strength. It is essential that you fully understand the properties of rubber crawlers, and observe the precautions for operating and handling them to prolong their life and get the most out of them. Be sure to read Section " Precautions for using the rubber crawlers" on page 189 before using them.

Warranty for rubber crawlers

The rubber crawlers are not warranted for free repair or replacement if they are damaged because of misuse by the customer, including the failure to comply with the prohibitions and the instructions for safe operation; (for example, the failure to check the tension of the rubber crawlers or service the rubber crawlers properly, or "using the rubber crawlers on surfaces and terrains which could physically damage them".)

Precautions for using the rubber crawlers

Prohibitions

Observe the following prohibitions:

- Do not operate or turn on surfaces or terrains that have sharp stones, a hard, uneven rock base, or that expose the crawlers to steel rods, scrap iron, or edges of iron plates. Failure to observe these prohibitions may damage the rubber crawlers.
- Do not operate the machine on a stony surface like a riverbed. Doing this may damage the rubber crawlers by catching gravel in the crawlers or may cause the crawlers to come off. Forcibly pushing obstacles will also shorten the life of the rubber crawlers.
- Prevent the rubber from getting exposed to oil, fuel, or chemical solvents. If they are exposed, immediately wipe them. Also, do not travel on roads which have oily surfaces.
- When storing the rubber crawlers for a long time period (more than three months), avoid placing them in a place subject to direct exposure to sunlight or rain.
- Do not operate the machine when the crawlers will be exposed to heat. (i.e., near an open-air fire, on a steel plate that has been exposed to the blazing sun, or on a hot asphalt road.)
- Never run on one rubber crawler track while the other is held above the ground with the implement. Doing this may damage the rubber crawler or cause it to come off.

Other precautions for using the rubber crawlers

Observe the following precautions when operating the machine:

- Never spin-turn on concrete or asphalt roads.
- Do not change course suddenly. Doing this will cause the rubber track to wear early or be damaged.
- Do not turn the machine across a large level gap while traveling. Remember that running over a level gap at a right angle will prevent the crawler from coming off.
- Slowly lower the machine after it has been lifted above the ground with the implement.
- It is not recommended that the machine be used to handle any materials that become oily after being crushed (e.g., soybeans, corn, rapeseed oil seeds, etc.). After unavoidably using the machine to handle such materials, clean the crawlers with water.
- It is not recommended that the machine be used to handle materials such as salt, ammonium sulfate, potassium chloride, potassium sulfate, or superbiphosphate of lime. Handling these materials may affect the core metal adversely. After using the machine to handle such materials, clean the crawlers with water.
- Do not operate the machine at the seashore. Doing this may affect the core metal adversely due to the salt content.
- If a rubber crawler is cracked, it could be easily damaged when exposed to salt, sugar, wheat, or soybeans. Be sure to repair any cracks in the rubber crawler to prevent rubber chips from getting into the materials being handled.
- Do not allow the rubber crawler to rub against a concrete wall.
- The rubber crawlers are prone to slipping on snow or on a frozen road. Be careful of skidding when traveling or operating on a slope in cold weather.

- Operating the machine in extremely cold weather will deteriorate the rubber crawlers, shortening their life.
- Use the rubber crawlers between -13°F to +131°F (-25°C to +55°C) because of the physical characteristics of rubber.
- Be careful not to damage the rubber crawlers with the bucket while operating the machine.
- Keep the crawlers in appropriate tension to prevent them from coming off.

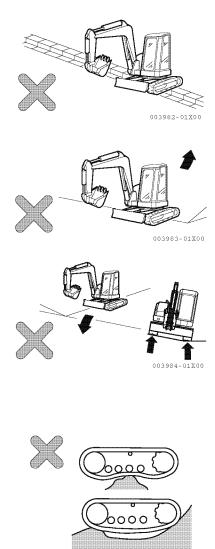
If the tension is too low, the rubber crawlers may come off under the following conditions.

(Even if the tension is adequate, take care when operating the crawlers under these conditions.)

- Do not steer the machine at an angle other than 90 degrees across a large level gap created by a curbstone or a rock [approximately more than 8 in. (20 cm)]. Run over a level gap at a right angle only to prevent the crawlers from coming off.
- Do not steer the machine across a boundary between the flat ground and a slope, while moving backwards.

If such travel is not avoidable, slow down the speed.

- Do not travel with the crawler on one side on a slope or on convex ground (causing a machine angle of more than 10 degrees), and with the crawler on the other side on flat ground, to prevent the rubber crawler from being damaged. Be sure to travel with the crawlers on both sides on the same level surface.
- The three cases illustrated above are those which could cause the rubber crawlers to loosen. In addition, do not subject the machine to such ground conditions as are illustrated in the figure on the right.

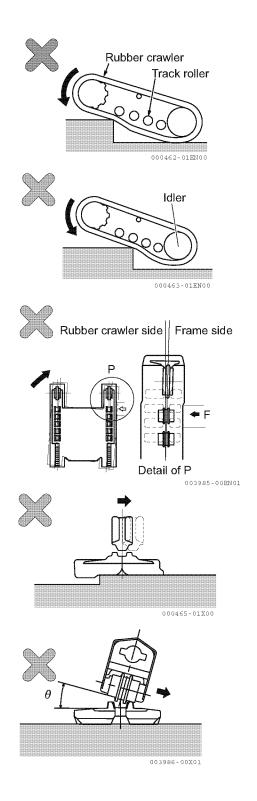


000461-01X00

192 3.Operating Instructions

[How the rubber crawlers come off]

- When running over a level gap, a clearance is created between the crawlers and the track rollers. At this point, the crawlers tend to come off.
- If the machine is traveling in reverse, clearance may also be created between the track rollers and the rubber crawlers, and between the idlers and the rubber crawlers, causing the rubber crawlers to come off.
- Other situations to be avoided.
 - When the machine changes the travel direction while the rubber crawlers are blocked sideways by an obstacle or the like.
 - When the idler and the track rollers are misaligned from the core metal, due to rubber crawler misalignment.
 - Traveling in reverse under the condition illustrated will cause the rubber crawlers to come off.
 - Changing the travel direction of the machine under the condition illustrated will cause the rubber crawlers to come off.



Checking and servicing the machine with rubber crawlers

To check and service the machine with rubber crawlers, refer to and follow Section "7.1 Table of service time intervals" on page 272.

3.20 Replacing the bucket without the quick coupler

A WARNING

- When driving pins into the bucket with a hammer, metal chips may fly. If metal chips should get into your eyes, they can cause serious injury. Use goggles, a hard hat, and gloves for safety when replacing the bucket.
- After removing the bucket, place it on solid ground in a stable position.
- When aligning the holes for pin A and pin B, be careful not to insert your fingers into those holes to prevent serious injury to your fingers. Visually check the alignment of the holes.

Work on level ground with good footing. If two or more persons work together, communicate with signals selected beforehand for safety.

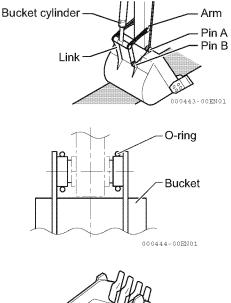
■ Replacement procedure

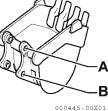
Replace the bucket according to the following procedure:

- **1.** Park the machine on level, flat ground, and lower the bucket onto the ground.
- 2. Stop the engine.
- **3.** Clean around the bucket pin to prevent foreign material from entering the pin holes.
- 4. Remove pins A and B.

IMPORTANT

- Keep the pins away from dirt or mud.
- The machines have dust seals on either end of the bush. Be careful not to damage them.





5. Clean the bucket boss section and mount the O-ring.

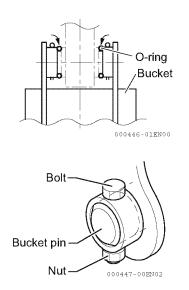
IMPORTANT

- Check that the O-ring is not damaged. If it is damaged, replace it with a new one.
- It is recommend that the O-ring should be replaced when replacing the bucket. (It extends the implement life.)
- 6. Connect the arm to A, and then connect the link to B.
- 7. Install the O-ring in position.

IMPORTANT

Before mounting the bucket, clean the arm pin hole and grease it.

- 8. Install the collars and bolts into the bucket pins A and B.
- 9. Grease the connecting parts.



3.21 Reversing the bucket without the quick coupler

- When driving pins into the bucket with a hammer, metal chips may fly. If metal chips should get into your eyes, they can cause serious injury. Use goggles, a hard hat and gloves for safety when reversing the bucket.
- After removing the bucket, place it stably on solid ground in a stable position.
- When aligning the holes for pin A and pin B, be careful not to insert your fingers into the holes to prevent serious injury to your fingers. Visually check the alignment of the holes.

Work on level ground with good footing. If two or more persons work together, communicate with signals selected beforehand for safety.

Reversing procedure

Reverse the bucket according to the following procedure:

1. Park the machine on level, flat ground, and lower the bucket onto the ground.

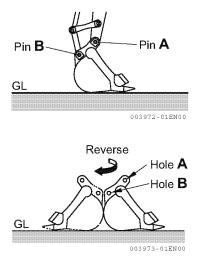
Note :

To remove the pins, place the bucket on the ground in such a way that it touches the ground lightly. Lowering the bucket down on the ground by its full weight will increase stresses on the pins and make the pins difficult to remove.

IMPORTANT

Keep the pins away from dirt or mud.

- 2. Stop the engine.
- **3.** Clean the area around the bucket pins to prevent foreign material from entering the pin holes.
- 4. Remove pins A and B.
- 5. Reverse the bucket.



- 6. Refer to Section "3.20 Replacing the bucket without the quick coupler" on page 193 for installation of the O-ring.
- 7. Connect the arm to hole **B**, and then the link to hole **A**.

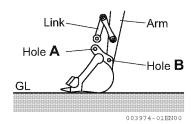
[You can easily align the hole of the link and hole **A** by lifting the bucket slightly.]

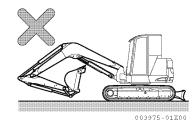
- Install the split pin into the bucket pins A and B.
- 9. Grease the connecting parts.

IMPORTANT

When using a reversed bucket, the bucket and the boom cylinder can contact each other when the arm is curled or the boom is lowered beyond the positions indicated in the figure on the right.

Never curl the bucket too much, and never allow it to contact the boom cylinder.



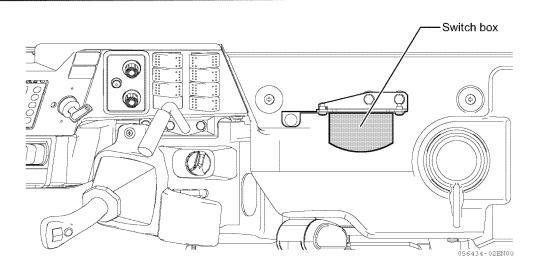


3.22 Handling quick coupler

Features of quick coupler

The quick coupler is the device to simplify the replacement of a variety of attachments for hydraulic implement. The distance between pins is adjustable so that the attachments with different distances between pins are available.

Description of switches



WARNING

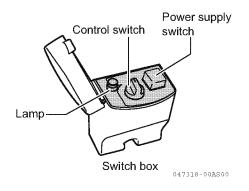
Never open the Switch Box cover except when mounting or dismounting the Attachment to prevent accidental activation of the Quick Coupler.

This may cause breakdown or sudden operation of the Attachment, causing serious accident.

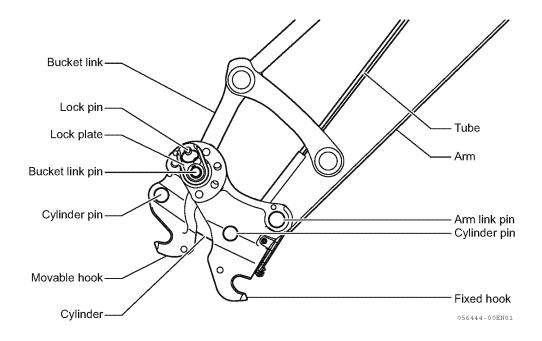
• Control switch of quick coupler

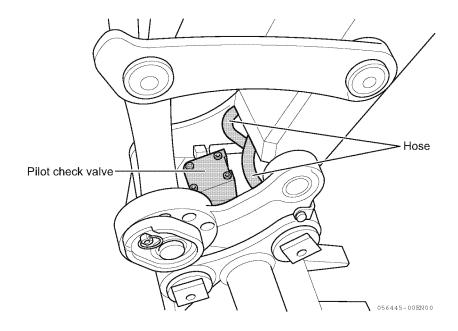
Use this switch to dismount or mount the attachment.

Operating control switch to dismount or mount the attachment			
Dismounting of attachment	Mounting of attachment		
Press Turn to the left Lamp goes 2 on. Power supply switch goes on, and beeps sound. 047316-00A500	Turn to the right Press		



Structure of quick coupler





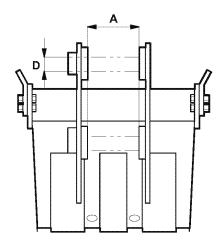
Attachment types

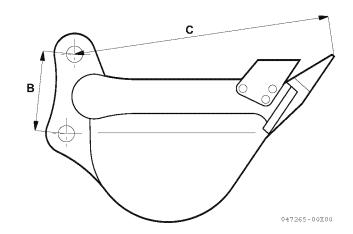
- The attachments, which can be mounted on the machine with quick coupler, are only the same 2-pin type as the bucket. The 1-pin type such as clamshell cannot be mounted in the quick coupler.
- 2. The following 2-pin type of attachments exceptionally cannot be mounted in the quick coupler.
 - 1-Attachments much different from the standard bucket in shape of mounting part
 - 2-Attachments with excessively long or short pin pitch
- **3.** Do not use any attachments improper for the machine with the quick coupler.

Allowable size of bucket

Allowable size of bucket to be mounted in the quick coupler

			Unit: in. (mm)
Mark	Part	SV100-2A	
А	Attachment width	7.09 (180) or more	
в	Distance between pins	Pin diameter Ø1.77 (45)	10.8 to 15.7 (275 to 400)
		Pin diameter Ø1.97 (50)	10.9 to 16.5 (278 to 419)
С	Operating radius of bucket	43.7 (1110) or less	
D	Pin diameter	Ø1.77 to 1.97 (45 to 50)	



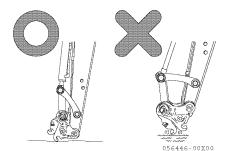


Phenomena that are not breakdowns

While setting the control switch of the quick coupler in the dismounting mode, stop the engine and then restart it to open the hook of the quick coupler.

Posture for storing the machine without attachment

Place the quick coupler on the ground as illustrated in the right figure for a long-term storage. If the quick coupler is placed on the ground when the control switch is in the dismounting mode, the hook will open when the engine is restarted, causing the floor surface scratches or the machine breakdown.

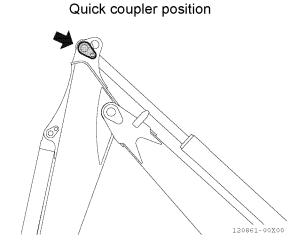


Arm cylinder rod pin installation position

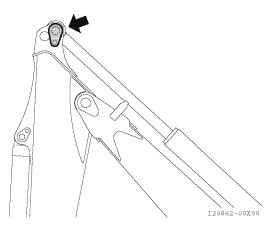
When using the quick coupler, make sure that the arm cylinder rod pin is in the quick coupler position.

Use of the quick coupler with the arm cylinder rod pin in the non-quick coupler position may cause the bucket to come into contact with the boom cylinder.

Ask your local dealer to change the position of the arm cylinder rod pin when needed.

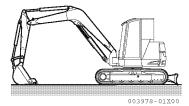


Non-quick coupler position



Dismounting attachment

- Never dismount the Attachment while it is still elevated, as it will drop to the ground and could cause bodily injury.
- Never dismount the Attachment unless it is resting on stable level ground, as it could otherwise fall over.
- 1. Park the machine on stable level ground.



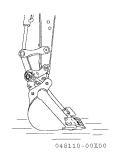
2. Lower the attachment onto the ground.

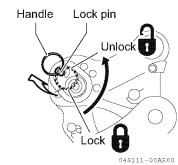
- 3. Set up the handle of the lock pin.
- **4.** Turn the arrow on the head of the lock pin from the lock position to the unlock position, and then pull it up.

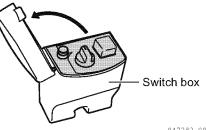
IMPORTANT

The lock pin cannot be removed from the body.

5. Open the switch box cover.



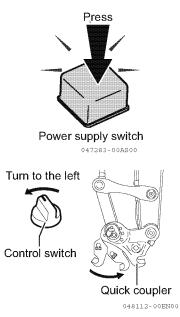


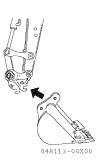


047282-00AS00

- 6. Press the power supply switch.Then, beeps sound and the power supply switch blinks.
- **7.** Turn the control switch to the dismounting position on the left side, and the attachment is dismounted.

8. Remove the quick coupler from the attachment.





Mounting attachment

A WARNING

- Never place your hands or any other part of your body between the Quick Coupler and the Attachment to prevent bodily injury.
- Never stand near the Attachment unless it is resting on stable level ground to avoid bodily injury.
- Never use a newly mounted Attachment before confirming that it has been properly secured to the Quick Coupler, and that the Lock Pin has been correctly installed, as accidental detachment could otherwise result.
- Always replace the Lock Pin if damaged or lost.

Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

- **1.** Place the attachment on stable level ground. Be sure to install the pins into the attachment.
- Atrase ourse outrase ourse the value hook Fixed hook os of atra ourse os of atra ourse os of atra ourse

Pin

2. Close the movable hook.

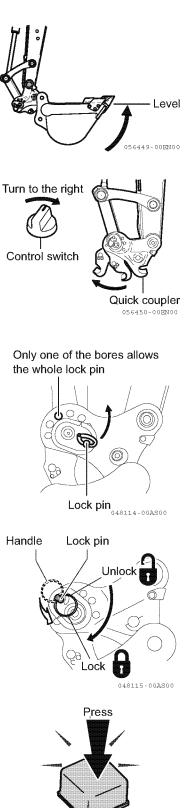
- **3.** Put the fixed hook onto the pin of the attachment on the arm side and set the quick hitch level with the ground as illustrated in the right figure.
- 4. Lift the attachment up in that state.

5. Curl the attachment so that it is level.

6. Turn the control switch to the mounting position on the right side, and the attachment is mounted.

7. Only one of the bores allows the whole lock pin. Install the lock pin to that bore.

- 8. Turn the arrow on the lock pin to the lock side.
- **9.** Put the handle of the lock pin down to the arrowed side.
- **10.** Make sure the attachment is securely mounted in the quick coupler before pressing the power supply switch on. The beeps stop sounding and the red lamp goes off.
- **11.** Close the switch box cover.



Power supply switch

Maintenance

Checking specifications

- · Check there are no cracks and plays.
- Check the bolts and nuts for looseness.
- Check the hydraulic piping for oil leak.

■ Installation instruction of the Lock Pin

1. Remove the damaged lock pin if any, and clean the bore of the lock plate.

Note:

Replace the lock plate with a new one if it is damaged.

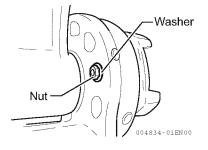
- **2.** Put a new lock pin into the bore of the lock plate.
- **3.** Install the washer and nut onto the lock pin from the back side of the lock plate.

Note:

Apply a lock agent ThreeBond 1324 on the thread.

- **4.** Tighten the nut (M10, Hex 14 mm) to 33 to 43 ft•lb.
- **5.** Confirm if the new lock pin can smoothly move to the lock and unlock positions.





■ Greasing

IMPORTANT

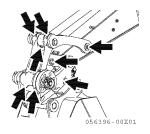
Grease the fittings thoroughly after washing the machine or after operation in rain, on soft ground, or in muddy water.

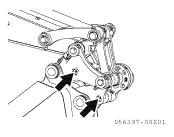
- **1.** Put the bucket and the blade on the ground and stop the engine.
- **2.** Clean the grease nipples indicated with the arrows in the right figures and grease them using a grease gun.
- **3.** After greasing, wipe off the excessive grease with waste cloth or the like.

■ Nonperiodic inspection

The pins in the attachment are free from rotation and cannot be worn.

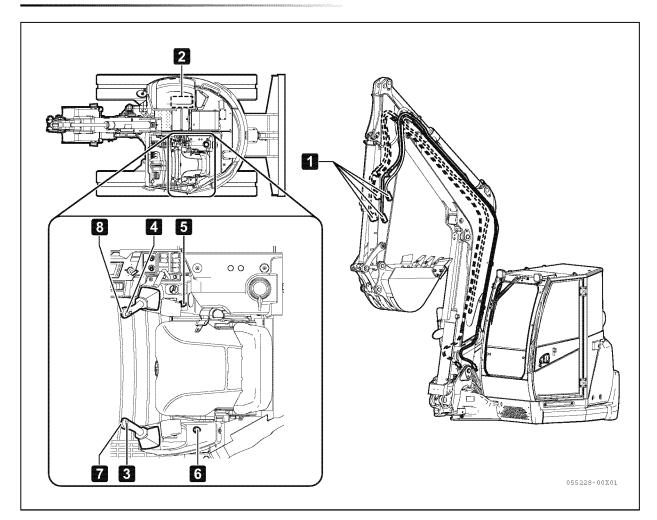
Apply antirust solvent or grease to them to prevent rust.





3.23 Handling hydraulic P.T.O.

Description of devices



Note:

The machine shown in the figure above is mounted with all components including all available options.

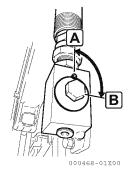
Stop valve

This valve serves to stop the flow of hydraulic oil.

A Open: Hydraulic oil flows.

B Closed: Hydraulic oil flow is stopped.

This valve needs to be closed when an attachment is removed or installed.



2 P.T.O. selector valve

This value is used to select either single acting or double acting operation for P.T.O. 1.

1. Open bonnet B.

2. Turn the P.T.O. selector valve to select either single acting or double acting operation.

Note:

For the P.T.O. 2, switching between single acting and double acting operation is not available and P.T.O. 2 is available only with double acting operation.

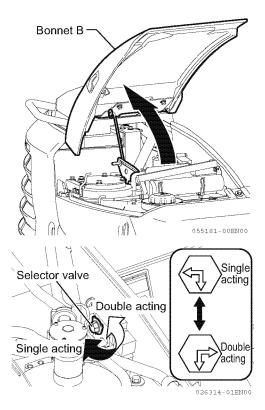
3 P.T.O. switch for P.T.O. 1

This switch is located on top of the left control lever and used to operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 1.

- To operate an attachment of the single acting type, move the P.T.O. switch to the left with the P.T.O. selector valve in the single acting position.
- To operate an attachment of the double acting type, move the P.T.O. switch to the right or the left, whichever is desired, with the P.T.O. selector value in the double acting position.

P.T.O. switch for P.T.O. 2

This switch is located on top of the right control lever and moved to the right or the left, whichever is desired, to operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 2.









5 P.T.O. flow control dial for P.T.O. 1 (Option)

6 P.T.O. flow control dial for P.T.O. 2 (Option)

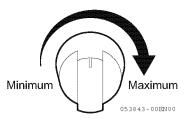
Turning the dial allows control of the maximum flow rate for the P.T.O.

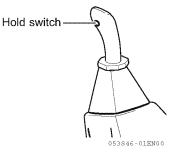
- Turn the dial to the left (counterclockwise) to reduce the maximum flow rate for the P.T.O.
- Turn the dial to the right (clockwise) to increase the maximum flow rate for the P.T.O.

The right-hand dial is for P.T.O. 1 flow control and the left-hand dial for P.T.O. 2 flow control.

Hold switch for P.T.O. 1

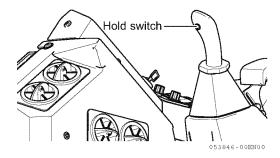
This switch is used to continuously operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 1.





B Hold switch for P.T.O. 2

This switch is used to continuously operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 2.



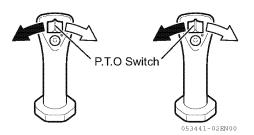
Hydraulic circuit

Always loosen plugs or connectors slowly after depressurizing the P.T.O. pipes when connecting or changing a hydraulic hose.

To install an attachment, connect the attachment hoses to the hydraulic circuit following the procedure below.

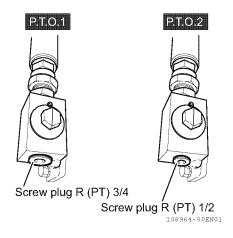
Depressurizing P.T.O. circuit

- **1.** Stop the engine and then turn the starter switch to the ON position. (Do not start the engine.)
- 2. Release the lock lever.
- **3.** Move each of the P.T.O. switches on top of the right and left control levers alternately to the right and the left two or three times.



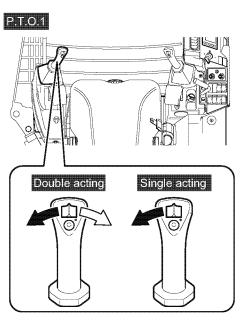
■ Connecting the hydraulic circuit

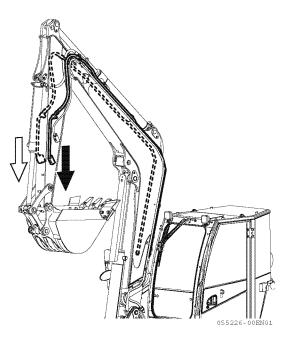
- Make sure that the stop valves are in the closed position and then remove the screw plugs. Be careful not to damage or lose the removed parts.
- **2.** Install the connectors supplied by the manufacturer of the attachment and connect the hoses.

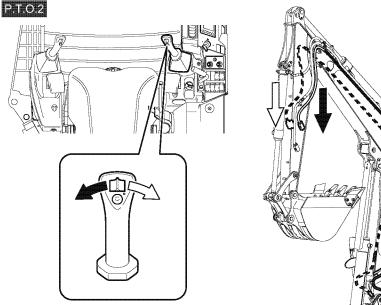


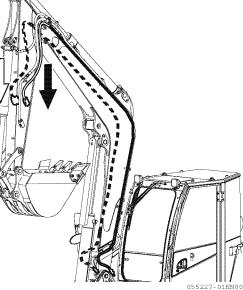
Oil flow system

The directions of switch operation and the oil flow routes are shown in the figures below.









Operating attachment

• Emergency stop

In cases where the attachment exhibits abnormal movements unintendedly, turn the starter switch to the OFF position to stop the engine or set the lock lever to the lock position, so that the hydraulic power source is shut off and the attachment is stopped. Then, contact your nearest dealer or distributor for inspection.

• For handling of the attachment, follow the operating instructions supplied by the attachment manufacturer to ensure correct use.

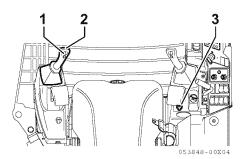
IMPORTANT

- Do not operate an attachment such as a breaker continuously for more than 1 minute. Doing so may cause overheating or damage to the attachment.
- In cases where P.T.O. is used as a hydraulic power source for a hydraulic hand tool such as a hand breaker, always set the flow control dial to the maximum position so that the hand tool is operated at lower engine speed. Operating a hand tool with the engine running at high speed may cause overheating or damage to the hand tool.

To operate attachments, follow the procedure below.

■ P.T.O. 1 operation

Use P.T.O. switch **1** and hold switch **2** on top of the left control lever and P.T.O. flow control dial **3** on the right of the operator's seat to operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 1.



1. Make sure that the stop valves are in the open position.

For oil flow routes, refer to the oil flow system described in Section "Hydraulic circuit" on page 210.

- 2. To use a breaker
- Make sure that the P.T.O. selector valve is in the single acting position.

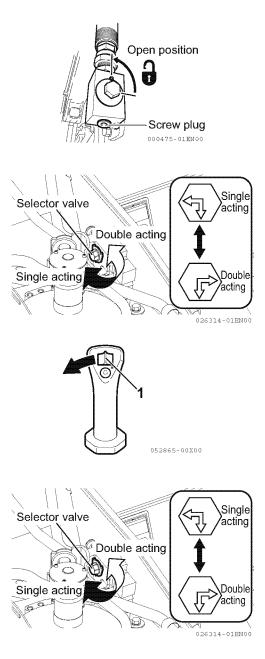
For the operation of the P.T.O. selector valve, refer to Section "Description of devices" on page 208.

Move P.T.O. switch **1** to the left to operate the breaker.

- **3.** To use a general attachment such as a tilt bucket.
- Make sure that the P.T.O. selector valve is in the double acting position.

For the operation of the P.T.O. selector valve, refer to Section "Description of devices" on page 208.

Move P.T.O. switch **1** to the right or the left, whichever is desired, to operate the attachment.





4. P.T.O. flow control function (Option)

Turning P.T.O. flow control dial **3** to the right or the left allows control of the maximum flow rate for the P.T.O. 1, so that the operating speed of the attachment connected to the P.T.O. 1 can be controlled.

With P.T.O. switch **1** moved to the right or the left, whichever is desired, turn P.T.O. flow control dial **3** to control the flow rate to a desired value.

Note:

For the P.T.O. flow control function, the P.T.O. flow rate may change depending on the type of attachment used and the working load applied to the machine.

5. Hold function

Hold switch **2** allows continuous operation of an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 1.

Activation method

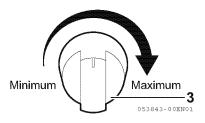
With P.T.O. switch **1** moved to the right or the left, press hold switch **2** to activate the hold function.

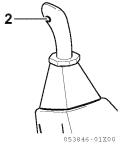
The attachment operates continuously even if the operator releases his/her finger from P.T.O. switch **1** while the hold function is activated.

While the hold function is activated, LED lamp **4** on top of the left control lever is illuminated to remind the operator that the attachment is operating.

Deactivation method

Press hold switch **2** again or move P.T.O. switch **1** while the attachment is operating continuously to deactivate the hold function and stop the attachment. When the hold function is deactivated, LED lamp **4** on top of the left control lever goes out.







Flow control

To control the P.T.O. flow rate when the hold function is activated, turn the flow control dial **3** to the maximum position and reduce the engine speed with the engine control dial.

Reducing the engine speed will reduce the P.T.O. flow rate.

■ P.T.O. 2 operation

Use P.T.O. switch **5** on top of the right control lever and P.T.O. flow control dial **6** on the left of the operator's seat to operate an attachment connected to the P.T.O. 2.

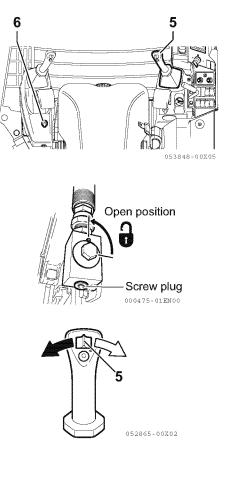
1. Make sure that the stop valves are in the open position.

For oil flow routes, refer to the oil flow system described in Section "Hydraulic circuit" on page 210.

2. Move P.T.O. switch 5 to the right or the left, whichever is desired, to operate the attachment.

Note:

The P.T.O. 2 is available only for attachments of the double acting type. Use the P.T.O. 1 for an attachment of the single acting type such as a breaker.



3. P.T.O. flow control function (Option)

Turning P.T.O. flow control dial **6** to the right or the left allows control of the maximum flow rate for the P.T.O. 2, so that the operating speed of the attachment connected to the P.T.O. 2 can be controlled.

With P.T.O. switch **5** moved to the right or the left, whichever is desired, turn P.T.O. flow control dial **6** to control the flow rate to a desired value.

Notes:

- For the P.T.O. flow control function, the P.T.O. flow rate may change depending on the type of attachment used and the working load applied to the machine.
- The hold function is not available to the P.T.O. 2.

Long-term storage

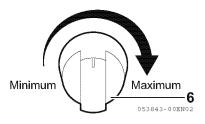
If the P.T.O. 1 and 2 are not used for a long period of time, do the following:

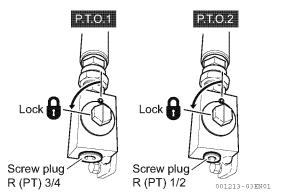
- Set the stop valves to the closed position.
- Remove the hoses from the stop valves and install the screw plugs with their threads wrapped with sealing tape into each of the hose connection ports.

Operating the P.T.O. switch without an attachment installed may cause overheating.

Specifications

- Maximum flow rate for P.T.O. 1 (without load): 34.3 GPM (130 L/min)
- Maximum flow rate for P.T.O. 2 (without load): 19.8 GPM (75 L/min)





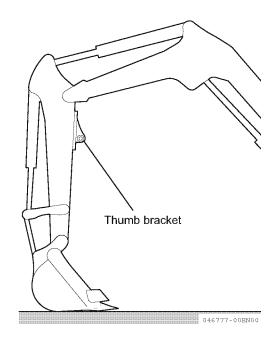
3.24 Handling the thumb bracket

Description of thumb bracket

The thumb bracket is a bracket for attaching a thumb cylinder.

IMPORTANT

- Do not use the thumb bracket for unintended uses.
- For selecting and attaching a thumb cylinder, consult your dealer.



3.25 Releasing the internal pressure of the hydraulic circuit by accumulator

■ Function of accumulator

The accumulator **1** accumulates the pressure of the operating circuit. As the operating circuit is activated for awhile even after stopping the engine, the following can be done:

- By moving the control levers to the direction of lowering the implement, it can go down on the ground with its self-weight.
- The pressure of the hydraulic circuit can be released.

Note:

The function can be used when the starter switch is "ON" and the lock lever is in the "Unlock" position.

Releasing the internal pressure of the hydraulic circuit

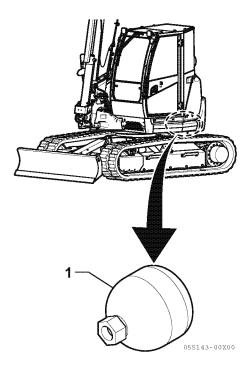
IMPORTANT

The procedures from stopping the engine to moving the control levers and pedals back and forth and around at full stroke must be performed within 15 seconds in the following procedures.

As the accumulator pressure is gradually reduced after stopping the engine, the pressure can only be released right after stopping the engine.

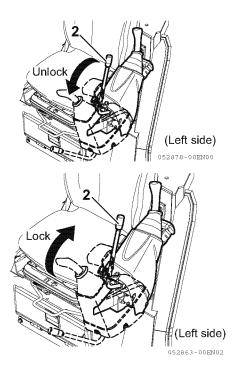
1. Place the implement down on the ground and stop the engine.

2. Set the starter switch to the "ON" position.





- **3.** Set the lock lever **2** to the "Unlock" position and move the control levers and pedals back and forth and around at full stroke to relieve the pressure of the hydraulic circuit.
- **4.** Set the lock lever **2** to the "LOCK" position to lock the control levers and pedals.



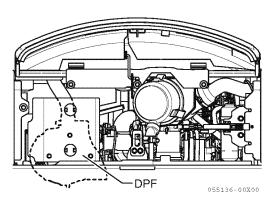
3.26 Handling diesel particulate filter (DPF)

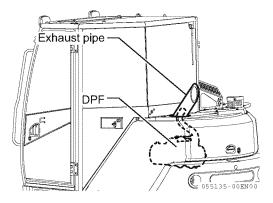
A WARNING

- During reset regeneration, fuel is burned directly in the DPF. This heat is used for regeneration in the soot filter and this combustion increases the exhaust gas temperature to almost 600°C. Care must be taken to ensure that there are no persons or flammable objects in the vicinity of the exhaust.
- DPF regeneration should be carried out in a well-ventilated, spacious outdoor location. Because exhaust gas contains colorless, odorless harmful carbon monoxide (CO), inhalation of exhaust gas is dangerous and may cause carbon monoxide poisoning.

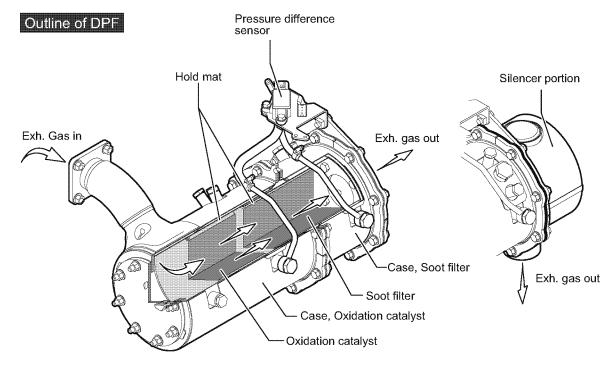
The function of the DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) is to decompose harmful substances present in exhaust gas using an oxidation catalyst and collect such substances in the soot filter to prevent release into the atmosphere.

Regeneration of the soot filter is required because harmful substances collected in the soot filter may cause clogging resulting in degraded engine performance. YANMAR engines adopt a continuous regeneration system that enables the collection of harmful substances in the DPF and simultaneous regeneration without interrupting the operation of the machine.





Moreover, as well as harmful substances, soot also accumulates in the soot filter. This mainly comprises metallic constituents of lubricating oil additives. Because, compared to harmful substances, the amount of soot is extremely small, soot will not immediately cause clogging of the soot filter. Nevertheless, because soot is composed of metallic constituents, unlike harmful substances, it cannot be burned in the DPF. Periodic maintenance of the soot filter must be carried out.



044869-00EN05

IMPORTANT

To maintain DPF performance, the following must be observed:

- The soot filter should be periodically removed from the DPF for maintenance to remove soot. Contact your nearest dealer or distributor when maintenance is required.
- Diesel oil with a sulfur content of 15 ppm or less (ultra-low sulfur) must be used as fuel.
- Low ash oil must be used as engine oil.

222 3.Operating Instructions

Notes:

- White smoke may be emitted from the exhaust pipe when the engine is cold or accelerating. This is due to the emission of water vapor accumulated in the DPF and the white smoke will disappear once the exhaust gas temperature has risen.
- Exhaust gas is cleaned by the catalyst provided in the DPF and this produces an exhaust odor different from that of conventional diesel engines.

Outline of DPF regeneration control

Electrical components such as a DPF differential pressure sensor, temperature sensor and intake throttle are mounted on the DPF. To prevent the excessive accumulation of harmful substances, the ECU uses these electrical components to automatically assist DPF regeneration.

Automatic regeneration

Self-regeneration

During high-speed, high-load operation, harmful substances are continuously burned and removed.

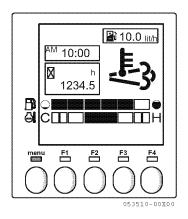
Assisted regeneration

When the accumulation of harmful substances in the DPF reaches a certain level, the engine ECU increases the exhaust gas temperature and automatically controls DPF regeneration.

Reset regeneration

The exhaust gas temperature is automatically increased by assisted regeneration approximately every 100 hours of operating time and fuel is burned directly in the DPF. This results in burning and removal of harmful substances.

During reset regeneration, the exhaust gas temperature rises to high levels. During reset regeneration, an exhaust gas temperature icon \pounds is displayed on the LCD monitor to give warning of high exhaust gas temperatures. Care must be taken to ensure that there are no flammable objects nearby during reset regeneration.



Notes:

- During reset regeneration, although the engine noise may change when it is idling without load, this does not indicate a malfunction.
- During regeneration, although the auxiliary regeneration device may produce an operating noise, this does not indicate a malfunction.

Manual regeneration

Frequent repetition of operation of the machine with the engine idling without load or running at low speed and low load may result in insufficient regeneration of the DPF. In such cases, the DPF regeneration icon is displayed on the LCD monitor. When the DPF regeneration icon is displayed, manual regeneration must be immediately performed following the procedure detailed below.

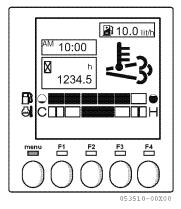
A WARNING

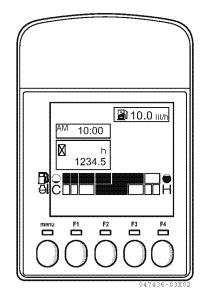
- During DPF regeneration, the temperature around the exhaust pipe and muffler and the exhaust gas temperature increase to high levels. The machine must be parked in a location where there are no persons or flammable objects and manual regeneration carried out.
- DPF regeneration should be carried out in a well-ventilated, spacious outdoor location. Because exhaust gas contains colorless, odorless harmful carbon monoxide (CO), inhalation of exhaust gas is dangerous and may cause carbon monoxide poisoning.
- **1.** Move the machine to a well-ventilated safe location.
- **2.** Turn the engine control dial to the low idle position to operate the engine at low idle speed.
- **3.** Move the lock lever to the lock position to put the machine into locked status.
- Pressing the DPF manual regeneration switch to ON position for 3 seconds or more will initiate manual regeneration.
- Once manual regeneration has been initiated, the engine speed will increase gradually to high idle speed and reset regeneration will be performed in this operating status.



- When manual regeneration begins, the exhaust gas temperature icon begins, the played on the LCD monitor.
- Manual regeneration will be completed in approximately 25 to 30 minutes, but may take longer depending on conditions.
- To stop manual regeneration in mid-operation, perform one of the following operations.
 - Move the lock lever to the unlock position to cancel the machine locked status.
 - Turn the engine control dial to the high idle position.
 - Press the DPF manual regeneration switch.
 - Turn the starter switch to the OFF position.
- To perform DPF regeneration again after regeneration has been aborted, repeat the procedure from step 1.
- **5.** When DPF regeneration has been completed, the engine speed will decrease gradually to low idle and the exhaust gas temperature icon will disappear from the LCD monitor.

Operation may be performed as usual after completion of manual regeneration.





DPF inspection and maintenance

The following procedures must be implemented for maintenance of the DPF soot filter and oxidation catalyst.

The above maintenance procedures should be requested from your nearest YANMAR dealer or distributor.

Soot filter

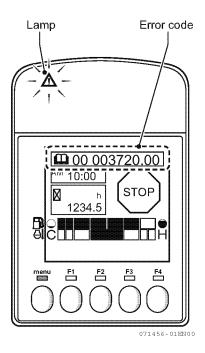
Cleaning:

If any of the error codes shown in the table below are displayed on the LCD monitor, clean the soot filter. When the soot filter needs to be cleaned, the caution or warning lamp flashes, the corresponding error codes displayed and the buzzer sounds.

Error code	Туре	Error description	
00 003719.07	Warning	DPF recovery regeneration prohibited	
00 003719.09	Warning	DPF recovery regeneration failure	
00 003720.00	Warning	Request for DPF ash cleaning	
00 003720.16	Caution	Request for DPF ash cleaning	
00 522573.00	Caution	DPF over accumulation	
00 522574.00	Caution	DPF over accumulation	

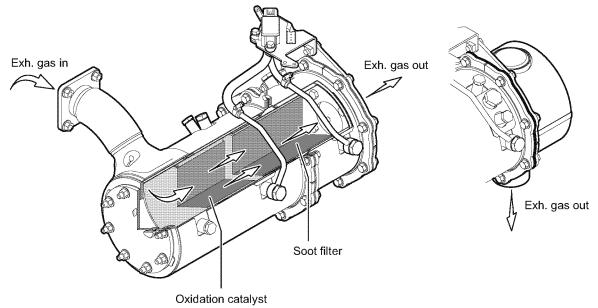
Replacement:

Replace the soot filter after every 9,000 operating hours.



Oxidation catalyst

Replace the oxidation catalyst every 9,000 operating hours



044869-00EN03

3.27 Handling SMARTASSIST-Remote

A WARNING

- Under no circumstances must attempts be made to disassemble, repair, remodel, move or otherwise tamper with SMARTAS-SIST-Remote communication devices. Failure to observe this warning may result in malfunction of the machine or communication device or fire.
- Be careful to ensure that cables or cords are not damaged by, for example, becoming trapped or being subjected to excessive tugging. Failure to observe this warning may result in malfunction of the machine or communication device or fire due to short circuits or severed cables or cords.
- Persons with pacemakers must be careful to ensure that the implant is never less than 8.7in. (22cm) away from the antenna on the communication device. Failure to observe this warning may result in adverse effects on the operation of pacemakers caused by radio waves emitted by the communication device.

■ Overview of SMARTASSIST-Remote

SMARTASIST-Remote is a system that uses communication devices mounted in machines to manage information pertaining to the location and operation of the machine. A contract must be signed for usage of SMARTASSIST-Remote. If interested, please contact your local YANMAR dealer for further information.

Regarding Use of Communication Devices

- Since SMARTASSIST-Remote uses mobile communications, use of the system may not be possible in places inaccessible by radio waves such as tunnels, underground locations or in buildings or in places with poor radio reception.
- Disassembling or removing the communication device may inhibit operation of the machine. In the event that the device needs to be removed or repaired, please contact your local YANMAR dealer.
- Although SMARTASSIST-Remote communication devices do not require any special operational procedures or inspections, please contact your local YANMAR dealer in the event of possible abnormalities.
- Communication devices mounted in machines use radio waves and, therefore, require approval in accordance with national and local laws and ordinances. Since measures such as the removal of communication devices before resale or export of machines in which they are mounted may be required, please contact your local YAN-MAR dealer in such cases.
- Some SMARTASSIST-Remote communication devices are mounted with a nickel metal hydride battery depending on the specification.

Disposal of communication devices mounted with a nickel metal hydride battery requires appropriate treatment. Please contact your local YANMAR dealer before disposing of such communication devices.

IMPORTANT

The SMARTASSIST-Remote communication device consumes minute amounts of power even when the starter switch of the machine in which it is mounted is in the OFF position. For details of long-term storage of machines, please refer to "Long-term Storage (Page 238)."

4. Transportation

4.1 Loading and unloading the machine

For safety in transporting the machine, comply with all applicable regulations and laws.

A WARNING

- Be careful when loading and unloading the machine, because it is a job of high hazard potential.
- Load or unload the machine on level, solid ground far away from the shoulder of the road.
- Load or unload the machine at a low engine speed.
- Use ramp plates of adequate strength having hooks. Check to see that the ramp plates are wide, long, and thick enough to safely sustain the machine so that you can load or unload safely. To prevent the ramp plates from bending too much, support them with blocks.
- Securely hook the ramp plates to the deck of the truck so that they will not come off.
- Remove mud, grease, and other slippery deposits from the track shoes, and grease, oil, and ice deposits from the ramp plates to prevent the machine from skidding.
- Never change the travel direction on the ramp plates. If you need to change the travel direction, go back down the ramp plates.
- Swing slowly when on the truck bed, if it becomes necessary to do so, since the machine's position will be unstable.
- Make sure that the side door of the cabin is locked, either in the open or closed position. Never open or close the side door on the ramp plates, to prevent it from swinging violently.

To load or unload the machine, be sure to use the ramp plates and follow the procedures outlined below:

1. Firmly brake the truck and apply wheel stoppers to the tires. Securely install the ramp plates on the bed of the truck in a position where the center of the truck aligns with the center of the machine. Make sure that the left and right ramp plates are at the same level.

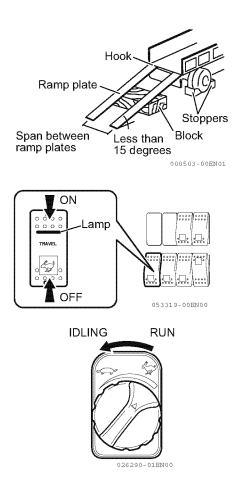
The ramp plates should be set at an angle of less than 15 degrees.

Determine the span between the ramp plates on the basis of the centers of the track shoes. Make sure that the travel automatic dual speed switch is OFF.

- 2. Return the engine control dial to reduce engine speed.
- **3.** Travel toward the ramp plates at a low speed, and load or unload the machine with the implement lowered as close as possible to the deck of the truck.

Do not operate any levers other than the travel levers while driving on the ramp plates.

4.Load the machine in a safe position on the truck.



4.2 Precautions for loading the machine

A WARNING

Load or unload the machine on level, solid ground far away from the shoulder of the road.

After loading the machine in a safe position on the truck, secure the machine as follows:

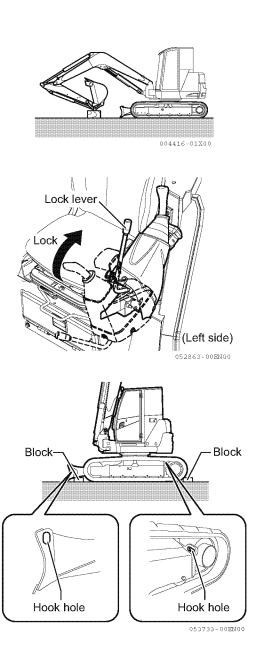
- 1. Place the blade down on the bed of the truck.
- **2.** Extend the bucket and arm cylinders to the maximum limit, and slowly lower the boom down on a block of wood.
- **3.** Stop the engine to take the starter switch key out of the starter switch.

(The automatic brake locks the swing motor.)

- **4.** Be sure to lock the control levers with the lock lever.
- **5.** Lock the bonnet, covers and cabin door with the starter switch key to prevent them from opening during transportation.
- 6. Provide wood blocks in the front and back of the track and hook the shackles to the machine's hook bores, and secure the machine with a chain or a wire rope so that the machine will not move during shipping. In particular, be sure to secure it to prevent skidding.

IMPORTANT

- To protect the bucket cylinder from being damaged during shipping, place a wooden block under one end of the bucket to prevent it from directly touching the deck of the truck.
- Do not use the hook hole for the purpose other than stabilizing the machine during shipping. In particular, do not use the hook in the track frame section for lifting the machine.



4.3 Precautions for transporting the machine

A WARNING

- Select a route for transporting the machine based on the road width and clearance, and the height and weight of the machine.
- Make sure that the side door of the cabin is closed and locked before shipping.

For safe transportation, comply with all local regulations and laws.

4.4 Suspending the machine

WARNING

- Never suspend the machine if any person is on the machine or the implement.
- Use wire ropes strong enough for the weight of the machine.
- Do not suspend the machine in any way other than that explained on the following page.

Failure to suspend the machine as prescribed will throw the machine off balance.

- Do not swing the machine being suspended.
- When suspending the machine, keep the machine in balance taking note of the center of gravity of the machine.
- Never stand near or under the suspended machine.

For safety in suspending the machine, comply with all applicable regulations.

Suspend the machine on the level ground as follows:

- **1.** Swing the upperstructure so that the blade is behind the operator's seat.
- 2. Raise the blade to the highest limit.
- **3.** Extend the hydraulic cylinders of the front implement (except for the boom swing cylinder) to the maximum.
- **4.** Stop the engine, and make sure that nothing is left around the operator's seat before leaving the machine.
- **5.** Put a slingbelt (or a wire rope) through (A) illustrated in the figure on the right and install shackles in the right and left holes in the side plate of the blade on the rear side, then securely fasten the slingbelt to the shackles.
- **6.** Put splints on the machine where the slingbelt touches when the slingbelt is pulled.
- **7.** Suspend the machine above the ground, wait until the machine is stable and then suspend it slowly.

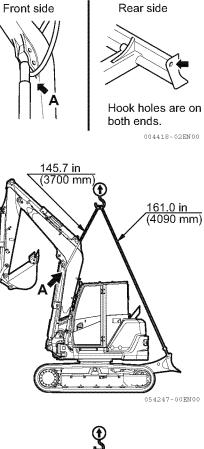
IMPORTANT

- For a machine with a cabin, be sure to close the side door and the windshield.
- Set each lock lever at the lock position.

Shipping weight:

lbs. (kg)

Quick coupler spec		
Steel crawler	Rubber crawler	
With cabin	With cabin	
21495 (9750)	21385 (9700)	





5. Care and Service in Cold Weather

5.1 Preparing for cold weather

In cold weather, you may have difficulty in starting the engine or the cooling water may freeze. So take measures as follows:

Fuel and lube oil

Use low viscosity fuel and lube oil. For the specified viscosities, refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.

Cooling water

WARNING

Anti-freeze is flammable. When handling anti-freeze, keep away from any sources of ignition and do not smoke.

IMPORTANT

Never use an anti-freeze containing methanol, ethanol, or propanol.

For the timing of cooling water change and the mixing ratio of the anti-freeze, refer to Section "Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" on page 318.

Note :

Because a YANMAR genuine long-life coolant (LLC) is added to the cooling water, you need not change it until the temperature falls below -31°F (-35°C).

If the temperature falls below -31°F (-35°C), refer to Section "Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" to control the density of the cooling water.

Battery

- The battery generates flammable gas and it can cause a fire and an explosion. Keep sparks or flames away from the battery.
- Battery electrolyte contains dilute sulfuric acid which is a strong acid. To avoid serious injury, do not allow the electrolyte to contact skin or splash into eyes.

If the electrolyte contacts your skin or gets in your eyes, flush immediately with large amounts of water, and obtain medical treatment at once.

Battery performance deteriorates as the temperature goes down. When the battery voltage is low, battery electrolyte will easily freeze. Keep the charging rate close to 100% (full charging) and keep the battery warm for easy start the next day.

Note :

Measure the specific gravity of the electrolyte to determine the charge ratio using the conversion table given below.

Electrolyte temperature Charging rate	68°F (20°C)	32°F (0°C)	14°F (-10°C)	-4°F (-20°C)
100%	1.28	1.29	1.30	1.31
90%	1.26	1.27	1.28	1.29
80%	1.24	1.25	1.26	1.27
75%	1.23	1.24	1.25	1.26

The specific gravity of the electrolyte varies with its temperature and recharged condition.

5.2 Precautions after a day's work

To prevent the machine from getting stuck in the morning due to frozen mud or water deposits on the undercarriage, be sure to observe the following precautions:

- Remove any mud or water adhering to the machine. If mud or water droplets adhering to the hydraulic cylinder rods should get into the seals, the seals could be damaged.
- Park the machine on solid, dry ground.
 If no solid, dry ground is available, lay plates on the ground and park the machine on the plates to prevent the frozen tracks from sticking to the ground.
- Drain the water accumulated in the fuel system by opening the drain cock, to prevent freezing.
- As battery performance deteriorates in low temperatures, cover the battery or move it to a warm place, and reinstall it in the machine on the next morning.

If the level of the battery electrolyte is low, add distilled water before starting operation on the next morning. To prevent the battery from freezing at night, do not add distilled water after completing operation.

5.3 After cold weather ends

When the temperature rises, do the following:

- Replace the lube oil and fuel with the specified viscosities according to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267.
- If you have added an AF-PT anti-freeze (for one winter season only), fully drain the cooling system, flush the inside of the cooling system well, and fill the cooling system with tap water.

6. Long-term Storage

6.1 Before storing

IMPORTANT

When storing the machine, set up the machine as illustrated in the figure at the right, to protect the hydraulic cylinder rods from becoming corroded.

When storing the machine for a long period, do the following:

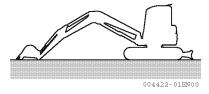
- Clean all parts and store the machine indoors. If you have to store the machine outdoors, park the machine on level ground and cover it with a protective sheet.
- Apply lube oil and grease to the machine and replace the engine oil.
- Apply a small amount of antirust to exposed parts of the hydraulic cylinder rods.
- Fill the battery with distilled water up to the upper level mark. After the battery has fully recharged, disconnect the negative terminal, and cover the battery or remove the battery from the machine to store it. The negative terminal can be disconnected by pulling up the cover on the cable.
- Add an anti-freeze to the cooling water if the air temperature can fall below 32°F (0°C).

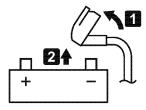
Because a YANMAR genuine long-life coolant (LLC) is added to the cooling water, you need not change it until the temperature falls below - $31^{\circ}F$ (- $35^{\circ}C$).

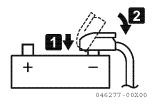
If the temperature falls below $-31^{\circ}F$ ($-35^{\circ}C$), refer to Section "Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" on page 318 to control the density of the cooling water.

• Lock the control levers and pedals with the lock lever and pedal guards respectively.

Retract the bucket and arm cylinders to place the bucket on the ground.







Antirust

When stored near the sea or in a place exposed to sea breezes, the machine easily becomes rusty. Carefully apply an antirust to all exposed parts of the piston rods and cover the machine with a polyethylene sheet or oil paper.

Recommended antirust	Manufacturer	
P-1300 (Solvent cutback rust		
preventive oil)	JXTG Nippon Oil &	
P-3 (Solvent cutback rust pre-	Energy Corporation	
ventive oil)		
P-300 (Solvent cutback rust pre-	Cosmo Oil	
ventive oil)		

Some antirust solvent damages rubber materials. Be sure to use the recommended antirust or its equivalent.

• To prevent condensation inside the fuel tank, either drain the fuel tank or fill the tank completely.

6.2 Storing

A WARNING

When you have to operate the machine indoors for the antirust procedure, be sure to ventilate the area well by opening windows and doors to prevent asphyxiation.

Move the machine at least once a month to form new oil films on all the moving parts during longterm storage, and recharge the battery at the same time.

6.3 Using the machine again

IMPORTANT

When reusing a machine that has been stored for a long time without receiving antirust treatment once a month, consult your dealer.

To use the machine again after a long period of storage, follow the procedure below:

- Wipe antirust off the hydraulic cylinder rods.
- Apply generous amounts of grease or oil to the moving parts.
- Drain water from the fuel tank, the engine oil pan and the hydraulic oil tank by removing the drain plugs.
- After starting the engine, warm-up the machine before use.

7. Troubleshooting

7.1 Phenomena that do not constitute faults

The following phenomena do not constitute faults:

Shaking of the bucket

When the boom is raised immediately after extending the arm while curling the bucket, the bucket may shake. This phenomenon is not a fault.

 Discontinuous arm movement When digging the ground with the arm, the arm may slow down momentarily at the almost vertical position especially when the engine speed is low.

This phenomenon is not a fault.

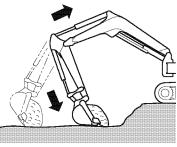
 Shift in upperstructure position
 When turning the machine sharply as when spin-turning or pivot-turning, the upperstructure may slightly shift out of position.

This phenomenon is not a fault.

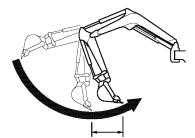
- Thermal shock of the travel motor
- If, in cold weather, the temperature of the hydraulic oil elevates after start-up and becomes $140^{\circ}F$ (60°C) higher than the outside temperature by relief operation without traveling, sometimes the machine cannot pivot-turn because of thermal shock. This phenomenon is not a fault.
- The boom swing cylinder is extended when digging

The swing cylinder may become extended in some digging situations or postures. This phenomenon is not a fault.

• Time lag in travel speed change response At low engine speed, a time lag in response may occur when the travel speed is changed from high speed to low speed. This phenomenon is not a fault.



004423-01X00



Slow-down is remarkable over this range 000514-01EN00

7.2 Towing

A WARNING

Always safely tow a disabled machine by using the proper equipment and procedures.

The use of incorrect methods or improper procedures could result in bodily injury.

Follow the recommendations below to properly perform the towing procedure.

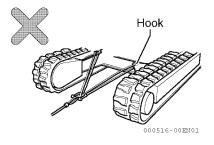
If the machine becomes mired in muddy ground and must be towed out, or when it is necessary for the machine to tow a heavy object, attach the sling belt as illustrated at the right.

IMPORTANT

- Check to see that the wire ropes, sling belts, and shackles to be used are of sufficient strength and are free from cracks and damage.
- Never tow the machine with the wire rope attached only to the hook.
- The hook is only intended for stabilizing the machine during shipping.



Shackle Sling belt 000515-00EN01



7.3 If the battery is overdischarged

- Stop the engine and turn the starter switch key to the "OFF" position before checking or servicing the battery. Never disconnect the battery cable during engine operation.
- Flammable hydrogen gas is produced by the battery, which may cause ignition. Keep flames, sparks and lit cigarettes away from the battery.
- The battery electrolyte contains dilute sulfuric acid, which is a strong acid.

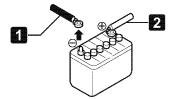
If the battery electrolyte contacts your clothes, they may be damaged.

If the battery electrolyte gets into your eyes or contacts your skin, flush immediately with large amounts of water, and obtain medical treatment at once.

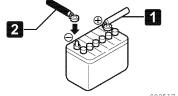
- Be sure to wear safety goggles when handling a battery.
- To disconnect the terminals, begin with the negative terminal (ground side); to connect the terminals, begin with the positive terminal.

If a tool touches both the positive terminal and the machine, hazardous sparks may be generated.

 If a terminal is loose, hazardous sparks may be generated due to poor contact, which could cause ignition and explosion.
 Be sure to securely connect the terminals. To disconnect, begin with the negative terminal (ground side)



To connect, begin with the positive terminal



000517-01EN00

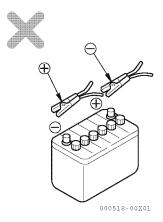
Starting the engine using booster cables

To start the engine using booster cables, do the following.

Precautions for connecting and disconnecting the booster cables

A WARNING

- When you start the engine using booster cables, wear safety goggles.
- If you start the engine by taking electric power from another machine, do not allow contact between your machine and the other machine.
- To connect the booster cables, begin with the positive terminal, and to disconnect them, begin with the negative terminal (ground side).
- If a tool touches the positive terminal and the machine at the same time, hazardous sparks may be generated.
- Do not connect the booster cables to terminals of reverse polarity. That is, never connect a negative terminal on one machine to the positive terminal on the other machine.
- As the last step, connect the negative booster cable to the upperstructure. At this time, sparks will be generated. Connect the terminal to a point as far away from the battery as possible.



IMPORTANT

• The booster cable capacity and the clip size should be suitable for the battery current.

- The battery of the normal machine should be the same capacity as that of the machine in trouble.
- Check the booster cables and clips for an absence of damage, cracks, and corrosion.
- Securely connect the clips.

■ Charging with the battery mounted on the machine

- Remove the battery cables from the positive and negative terminals of the battery before charging it. If this is not done, abnormal voltage may be applied to the generator which could damage it.
- While charging the battery, remove all plugs to release the gases generated by charging.
- If the battery overheats [the temperature of the electrolyte exceeds 113°F (45°C)], interrupt charging.
- Stop charging as soon as the process has been completed.

Overcharging could cause the following troubles:

- · Overheating of the battery
- Decrease in battery electrolyte
- Battery failure
- Do not reverse polarity of the cable connections to the battery (i.e., the negative cable to the positive terminal, or the positive cable to the negative terminal).

Reversing the polarity of the connections will cause the generator to be damaged.

• Handling the battery (except for checking the electrolyte level and measuring the specific gravity of the electrolyte) should be performed after disconnecting the battery cables.

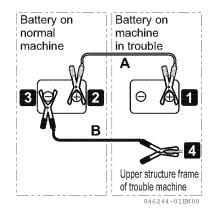
Connecting the booster cables

Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position, and connect the booster cables as follows:

- Turn the starter switches on both the normal machine and the machine in trouble to the "OFF" position.
- 2. Connect the clip of the booster cable A (normally red) to the positive terminal on the machine in trouble.
- **3.** Connect the other clip of the booster cable **A** to the positive terminal on the normal machine.
- **4.** Connect the clip of the booster cable **B** (normally black) to the negative terminal on the normal machine.
- **5.** Connect the other clip of the booster cable **B** to the upperstructure frame of the machine in trouble.

Starting the engine

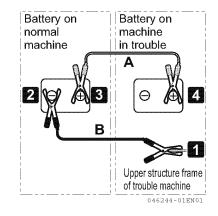
- **1.** Make sure that the clips are securely connected to the battery terminals.
- **2.** Start the engine on the normal machine, and increase the engine speed to the maximum.
- 3. Turn the starter switch on the machine in trouble to the "START" position to start the engine. If the engine does not start, wait for more than two minutes and retry starting. (At this point, do not stop the engine on the normal machine and keep engine speed at full.)



Disconnecting the booster cables

After the engine on the machine in trouble has started, disconnect the booster cables in the reverse order of the connecting procedure.

- **1.** Remove the clip of the booster cable **B** from the upperstructure frame on the machine in trouble.
- **2.** Remove the clip of the booster cable **B** from the negative terminal on the normal machine.
- **3.** Remove the clip of the booster cable **A** from the positive terminal on the normal machine.
- **4.** Remove the clip of the booster cable **A** from the positive terminal on the machine in trouble.



7.4 Troubleshooting

Engine and electrical equipment

- Contact your dealer about the measures shown in parentheses in the list below.
- If there is any abnormality or trouble whose cause is unknown other than those shown below, ask your dealer for repair.

Problem		Cause	Measure	
	e oil pressure alarm lamp	Shortage of engine oil	Check engine oil level and replanich	
lights u	чр.	Too much engine oilClogged engine oil filter	replenish.Check engine oil level and adjust.Replace engine oil and engine oil filter.	
		 Defective engine oil pressure switch or wiring 	(• Check and repair.)	
Error engine display	indicating abnormal cooling water temp. is yed.	 Insufficient amount of cooling water Clogged or broken radiator fin 	 Check cooling water level and replenish. Check radiator fin. Clean or repair. 	
		 Cooling water leakage Loose or broken fan belt Internal contamination of cooling water system Defective cooling water pump 	 (• Check and repair.) • Adjust fan belt tension or replace. • Replace cooling water. Clean inside of cooling water system. (• Check and repair.) 	
Batter lights i	y charge alarm lamp up.	 Loose or broken fan belt Defective battery Insufficient power generation of alternator 	 Adjust fan belt tension or replace. Check battery electrolyte level and replenish. Recharge or replace battery. (• Check and repair.) 	
	g on starter motor does art engine.	 Shortage of fuel Air mixed in fuel system 	 Refill fuel tank. Release the air. Repair portion from which air enters fuel system. Release the air. 	
		 Improper fuel Clogged fuel filter Abnormal fuel injection Improper compression 	 Replace fuel with specified one. Replace fuel filter. (• Check and repair.) (• Check and repair.) 	
Starter moto turns slowly.	r motor does not turn or slowly.	 Insufficient battery voltage 	 Check battery electrolyte level and replenish. Recharge or replace battery. 	
		 Defective wiring system Defective starter switch Blown out slow blow fuse Defective starter motor 	(• Check and repair.) (• Check and repair.) • Replace slow blow fuse (• Check and repair.)	
Dark machir	fumes come out of ne.	 Overload Clogged or contaminated air cleaner element. Improper fuel Abnormal fuel spray pattern of fuel injection valve 	 Lower working load. Clean or replace air cleaner element. Replace fuel with specified one. (• Check and repair.) 	
		Improper compressionMalfunction of EGR valve	(• Check and repair.) (• Check and repair.)	

Problem		Cause	Measure	
Engine	Exhaust color is white or bluish white.	 Improper fuel Abnormal fuel injection Too much engine oil Combustion or abnormal consumption of engine oil 	 Replace fuel with specified one. (•Check and repair.) Check and adjust engine oil level. (•Check and repair.) 	
Electrical equipment	LED lamp does not light up when starter switch is turned on.		(• Check and repair.)	
	Light is dark even while engine is running at full speed.	Defective wiring systemDefective alternator	(• Check and repair.) (• Check and repair.)	

Machine performance

- Contact your dealer about the measures shown in parentheses in the list below.
- If there is any abnormality or trouble whose cause is unknown other than those shown below, ask your dealer for repair.

Problem		Cause	Measure	
Machine perfor-	Power or speed of moving part is low.	 Deteriorated function caused by worn hydraulic pump 	(• Replace hydraulic pump.)	
mance		 Operating pressure of system relief valve or circuit relief valve in control valve is lower than set value. 	(• Check and repair control valve.)	
		 Broken hydraulic cylinder Insufficient amount of hydraulic oil 	 (• Check and repair.) • Check hydraulic oil level and replenish. (Check filter Clean another clean) 	
		Clogged filter	(• Check filter. Clean or replace.)	
	Upper structure does not swing	Insufficient amount of grease	Check and grease.	
	or does not swing smoothly.	 Defective swing brake valve 	(• Check and repair.)	
		 Defective swing motor 	(• Check and repair.)	
		 Swing brake is not released. 	(• Check and repair.)	
	Hydraulic oil temp. is too high.	 Insufficient amount of hydraulic oil 	 Check hydraulic oil level and replenish. 	
		 Overload 	 Lower working load. 	
	Machine does not travel straight.	 Improperly adjusted crawler or foreign material caught 	Adjust or check.	
		 Defective hydraulic motor 	(• Check and repair.)	
		 Defective hydraulic pump 	(• Check and repair.)	
		Defective control valve	(• Check and repair.)	
		 Broken sprocket, idler or track roller 	(• Check and repair.)	

MAINTENANCE

1.	Precautions for Servicing	252
2.	Basic Servicing Practices	255
2.1	Diesel fuel	256
2.2	Engine oil	258
2.3	Engine cooling water	259
2.4	Hydraulic oil and	
	Reduction gear oil	261
2.5	Handling grease, oil,	
	fuel and filters	262
2.6	Electrical equipment	263
2.7	Hydraulic system	264
3.	Consumables	266
4.	Fueling, Oiling and	
	Greasing Based on	
	Greasing Based on Temperature Range	267
4.1	-	
4.1 4.2	Temperature Range	267
	Temperature Range Fuel and oil Cooling water	267
4.2	Temperature RangeFuel and oilCooling waterStandard Tightening Torque	267 267
4.2 5 .	Temperature RangeFuel and oilCooling waterStandard Tightening Torquefor Bolts and Nuts	267 267 268
4.2 5.	Temperature Range Fuel and oil Cooling water Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts Required tools	267 267 268 268
4.2 5. 5.1 5.2	Temperature Range Fuel and oil Cooling water Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts Required tools Torque table	267 267 268 268
4.2 5.	Temperature Range Fuel and oil Cooling water Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts Required tools	267 267 268 268 269

7.	Maintenance Table	.272
7.1	Table of service time intervals	. 272
7.2	Service intervals when using	
	the hydraulic breaker	. 276
8.	Procedures for Maintenance	277
8.1	First services	. 277
8.2	Nonperiodic services	. 278
8.3	Checking before start-up	. 297
8.4	Maintenance every	
	50 service hours	. 298
8.5	Maintenance every	
	100 service hours	. 299
8.6	Maintenance every	
	250 service hours	. 299
8.7	Maintenance every	
	500 service hours	. 303
8.8	Maintenance every	
	1000 service hours	. 311
8.9	Maintenance every	
	1500 service hours	. 317
8.10	Maintenance every	
	2000 service hours	. 318
8.11	Maintenance every	
	3000 service hours	. 325

1. Precautions for Servicing

Do not use any inspection or servicing procedures that are not described and recommended in this manual.

Park the machine on solid, level ground to inspect and service it.

Check the hour meter

Read the hour meter every day to check if any service item has reached the time prescribed for implementation.

■ Use YANMAR genuine replacement parts

Use YANMAR genuine parts specified in the Parts Catalog.

Use YANMAR genuine lube oil and grease

Use YANMAR genuine lube oil and grease of specified viscosity for the operating temperature range.

■ Use clean lube oil and grease

Use clean lube oil, grease and containers and prevent dust from mixing into them.

Clean the machine

Clean the machine for easy isolation of faulty parts.

Particularly clean the grease nipple, breather, and the oil level gauge glass to prevent dust from entering into them.

Be careful of high water and oil temperatures

It is dangerous to replace the oil, the cooling water and the filter immediately after stopping the engine. Wait until their temperatures drop. When the engine oil is too cool, heat the oil to adequate temperature [approximately 68°F to 104°F (20°C to 40°C)] before draining oil to improve draining efficiency.

■ Check the drained oil and the old filter element

When replacing the engine oil, the hydraulic oil, or the filter element, check the drained oil and the old filter element for metallic dust and foreign solid deposits.

■ Observe precautions for replenishing oil

If a strainer is mounted on the oil port, do not remove the strainer to replenish oil.

Be careful of dust

When checking or replacing the oil, do this in a clean environment to prevent dust contamination.

Attach the warning tag

When the oil or the cooling water is being drained, attach the "SERVICING IN PROGRESS" tag to one of the control levers so that other persons will not start the engine.

Observe the warning labels

Observe the warning labels affixed to the machine.

Observe the precautions for welding

- Make sure to disconnect the battery cables (positive and negative terminals).
- Do not apply more than 200 V continuously.
- Ground the machine within 3.3 ft. (1000 mm) from the welded part.
- Make sure that there is no seal or bearing between the welded part and the grounded part.
- Do not ground around the pins on the implement or the hydraulic cylinder.

Be careful of fire

Clean parts with noncombustible detergent.

Clean mating surfaces before assembly

When you have removed a part with an O-ring or a gasket seal, clean the mating surfaces before installing the new part.

At this point, do not fail to refit the O-ring or the gasket.

Do not drop anything from your breast pocket

When you open the cover and attempt to look down into the inside of the machine, remove loose items from your breast pocket to eliminate the risk that they may drop into the machine.

■ Check the undercarriage

After the machine is used at a rocky place, check the undercarriage for damage. Check for loose bolts and nuts, cracks, wear, and other damage. Loosen the tension of the crawlers more than usual.

■ Observe the precautions for cleaning the machine

- Do not spray steam directly at the connectors.
- Do not splash water on the monitors in the cabin.
- Do not spray high-pressure water directly at the radiator and the oil cooler.

Check before and after working

If the machine is to be used in mud, rain, snow, or on a beach, check for loose plugs and cocks before working. After working, clean the machine and check each part for cracks and damage and check for loose or missing bolts and nuts. Apply grease earlier than usual. Particularly apply grease every day to the pins on the implement which are submerged in mud.

■ Observe the precautions for working in a dusty place

If you use the machine in a dusty place, be careful of the following:

- Check the air cleaner for clogging.
- Clean the air cleaner element earlier than scheduled.
- Clean the radiator fin earlier to prevent it from clogging.
- Clean or replace the fuel filter element earlier than scheduled.
- Clean the electric equipment, especially the starter motor and the generator, to avoid dust deposits.

Do not mix oils

Never mix oils of different makes or types. If you have to replenish an oil with a different make or type than the one already in the tank, remove the remaining oil completely.

2. Basic Servicing Practices

- Use YANMAR genuine replacement parts.
- Do not mix oils of different makes and types when replacing or replenishing oil.
- The following types of oil, fuel and cooling water are used at the factory for shipping unless otherwise specified:

Item	Туре
Engine oil	Engine oil SAE10W30, CJ-4 class
Travel reduction gear oil	Gear oil SAE90 (GL-4)
Hydraulic oil	ISO VG46
Fuel	Diesel light oil (Ultra low sulfur)
Engine cooling water	YANMAR genuine long-life coolant (LLC) 51% added soft water

2.1 Diesel fuel

- Because the fuel injection pump is a precision device, using a fuel containing water or dust will cause problems.
- Be careful that impurities will not be mixed into the fuel especially after storing the machine and refueling.
- Be sure to use a fuel recommended in the Operation & Maintenance Manual.
 In addition, keep in mind that you should use a fuel appropriate for the operating temperature range because it will freeze at temperatures lower than 5°F (-15°C).
- Fully refuel every day after finishing the work so that the moisture in the fuel tank will not condense and water will not mix with the fuel.
- Before starting the engine, or ten minutes after refueling, drain any deposits and water through the drain plug on the fuel tank.
- If the fuel level becomes low or the filter element is replaced, the air should be bled from the fuel system.

Diesel Fuel Specifications

Diesel fuel should comply with the following specifications. The table lists several worldwide specifications for diesel fuels.

Diesel fuel specification	Location
ASTM D975	USA
No. 1D S15	
No. 2D S15	
EN590:96	European Union
ISO 8217 DMX	International
BS 2869-A1 or A2	United Kingdom
JIS K2204 Grade No. 2	Japan
KSM-2610	Korea
GB252	China

Additional technical fuel requirements

- The fuel cetane number should be equal to 45 or higher.
- The sulfur content must not exceed 15 ppm by volume. A higher sulfur content fuel may cause sulfuric acid corrosion in the cylinders of the engines. Especially in U.S.A. and Canada, Ultra Low Sulfur fuel must be used.
- Never mix kerosene, used engine oil, or residual fuels with the diesel fuel.
- Water and sediment in the fuel should not exceed 0.05 % by volume.
- Keep the fuel tank and fuel-handling equipment clean at all times.
- Poor quality fuel can reduce engine performance and/or cause engine damage.
- Fuel additives are not recommended. Some fuel additives may cause poor engine performance. Consult your dealer for more information.
- Ash content not to exceed 0.01 % by volume.
- Carbon residue content not to exceed 0.35 % by volume. Less than 0.1 % is preferred.
- Total aromatics content should not exceed 35 % by volume. Less than 30 % is preferred.

MAINTENANCE

- PAH (Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons) content should be below 10 % by volume.
- Metal content of Na, Mg, Si, and Al should be equal to or lower than 1 mass ppm. (Test analysis method JPI-5S-44-95)
- Lubricity: Wear mark of WS1.4 should be Max. 0.018 in. (460 μm) at HFRR test.
- Be sure to use fuel that does not contain zinc or sodium.
- Never use kerosene or fuel mixed with kerosene.
- Never use fuel that has been stored in a drum or the like for a long period of time.
- Be sure to use fuel purchased from authorized diesel fuel suppliers.

Bio-diesel fuels

In Europe and in the United States, as well as some other countries, non-mineral oil based fuel resources such as RME (Rapeseed Methyl Ester) and SOME (Soybean Methyl Ester), collectively known as FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Esters), are being used as extenders for mineral oil derived diesel fuels.

YANMAR approves the use of bio-diesel fuels that do not exceed a blend of 7 % (by volume) of FAME with 93 % (by volume) of approved mineral oil derived diesel fuel. Such bio-diesel fuels are known in the marketplace as B7 diesel fuels.

These B7 diesel fuels must meet certain requirements.

- 1. The bio-fuels must meet the minimum specifications for the country in which they are used.
- In Europe, bio-diesel fuels must comply with the European Standard for both EN14214 and EN590 (for Oxidation stability).
- In the United States, bio-diesel fuels must comply with the American Standard for both ASTM D-6751 and ASTM D-7467 (for Oxidation stability).
- 2. Bio-fuels should be purchased only from recognized and authorized diesel fuel suppliers.

Precautions and concerns regarding the use of bio-fuels:

- 1. Free methanol in FAME may result in corrosion of aluminum and zinc FIE components.
- 2. Free water in FAME may result in plugging of fuel filters and increased bacterial growth.
- **3.** High viscosity at low temperatures may result in fuel delivery problems, supply pump seizures, and poor injection nozzle spray atomization.
- **4.** FAME may have adverse effects on some elastomers (seal materials) and may result in fuel leakage and dilution of the engine lubricating oil.
- **5.** Even bio-diesel fuels that comply with a suitable standard as delivered, will require additional care and attention to maintain the quality of the fuel in the equipment or other fuel tanks. It is important to maintain a supply of clean, fresh fuel. Regular flushing of the fuel system, and/or fuel storage containers, may be necessary.
- **6.** Use bio diesel fuel within 2 months after filling it to the fuel tank, or within 3 months after its production at the manufacturer.

The use of bio-diesel fuels that do not comply with the standards as agreed to by the diesel engine manufacturers and the diesel fuel injection equipment manufacturers, or biodiesel fuels that have degraded as per the precautions and concerns above, may affect the warranty coverage of your engine.

2.2 Engine oil

- Only use the engine oil specified. Other engine oils may affect warranty coverage, cause internal engine components to seize and/or shorten engine life.
- Prevent dirt and debris from contaminating the engine oil. Carefully clean the oil cap/dipstick and the surrounding area before you remove the cap.
- Never mix different types of engine oil. This may adversely affect the lubricating properties of the engine oil.
- Never overfill. Overfilling may result in white exhaust smoke, engine overspeed or internal damage.

Engine Oil Specifications

Use an engine oil that meets or exceeds the following guidelines and classifications:

Service categories

- API service categories CJ-4
- ACEA service categories E6
- JASO service category DH-2

Definitions

- API classification (American Petroleum Institute)
- ACEA classification (Association des Constructeurs Européens d'Automobilies)
- JASO (Japanese Automobile Standards Organization)

Note:

- Be sure the engine oil, engine oil storage containers, and engine oil filling equipment are free of sediments and water.
- YANMAR does not recommend the use of engine oil "additives."

■ Additional technical engine oil requirements:

The engine oil must be changed when the Total Base Number (TBN) has been reduced to 1.0 mgKOH/g. TBN (mgKOH/g) test method; JIS K-201-5.2-2 (HCI), ASTM D4739 (HCI).

2.3 Engine cooling water

- Because unpotable water may contain much calcium and impurities, using it will cause water scale to build up in the engine or the radiator, causing poor heat exchange and overheating. Never use unpotable water for cooling purposes.
- When using an anti-freeze, observe the precautions described in the Operation & Maintenance Manual.
- A YANMAR machine is shipped with YANMAR genuine anti-freeze. The anti-freeze is anticorrosive to protect the cooling system. Because the anti-freeze can be used continuously over two years, you need not remove it in hot weather.

Keep sources of ignition away from the antifreeze because it is flammable.

- The mixing ratio of anti-freeze to water differs based on air temperature. For the mixing ratio, refer to Section " Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" on page 318.
- If the engine is overheated, replenish the cooling water after the engine has cooled down.
- Shortage of cooling water will cause the cooling system not only to overheat but also to corrode, due to air which comes in the system.



Scald Hazard!

- Never remove the radiator cap if the engine is hot. Steam and hot engine coolant will spurt out and seriously burn you. Allow the engine to cool down before you attempt to remove the radiator cap.
- Tighten the radiator cap securely after you check the radiator. Steam can spurt out during engine operation if the cap is loose.
- Always check the level of the engine coolant by observing the reserve tank.
- Failure to comply will result in death or serious injury.



may splash and burn you.

- Failure to comply could result in death or serious injury.
- Only use the engine coolant specified. Other engine coolants may affect warranty coverage, cause an internal buildup of rust and scale and/or shorten engine life.
- Prevent dirt and debris from contaminating the engine coolant. Carefully clean the radiator cap and the surrounding area before you remove the cap.
- Never mix different types of engine coolants. This may adversely affect the properties of the engine coolant.

Engine Coolant Specifications

Use a Long Life Coolant (LLC) or an Extended Life Coolant (ELC) that meets or exceeds the following guidelines and specifications.

■ Alternative engine coolant

If an Extended or Long Life Coolant is not available, alternatively, you may use an ethylene glycol or propylene glycol based conventional coolant (green).

Note:

- Always use a mix of coolant and water. Never use water only.
- Mix coolant and water per the mixing instructions on the coolant container.
- The mix ratio of Long Life Coolant or anti-freeze to water should be from 30 to 60 %.
- Water quality is important to coolant performance. YANMAR recommends that soft, distilled or demineralized water be used to mix with coolants.
- Never mix extended or long life coolants and conventional (green) coolants.
- Never mix different types and/or colors of extended life coolants.
- Replace the coolant every 1000 engine hours or once a year.

■ Additional technical coolant specifications:

- ASTM D6210, D4985 (US)
- JIS K-2234 (Japan)
- SAE J814C, J1941, J1034 or J2036 (International)

2.4 Hydraulic oil and Reduction gear oil

• Because the oil is used in the machine under extreme conditions (high temperature and pressure), it deteriorates as time elapses.

Be sure to use oils of the grades which are specified in the Operation & Maintenance Manual and suitable for the operating temperature range.

Even if the oil is not contaminated, be sure to replace the oil within the specified service hours.

• Oil is equivalent to blood in a human body. Be careful in handling it so that impurities (water, metallic dust, and foreign solids) will not be mixed into it.

Most machine failures are caused by impurities in the oils.

Be careful not to mix impurities into the oils especially after storing the machine and replenishing oils.

- Do not mix oils of different makes and types.
- Use the specified amount of oil.
- Use of larger or smaller amounts of oil than specified may cause machine problems.
- If the oil becomes cloudy, it may suggest that water or air could have been mixed into the hydraulic system. If this event happens, ask your dealer for assistance.
- Be sure to replace the oil filter element with a new one when changing the oil.
- To know what condition the machine is in, it is recommended that you analyze the properties of the oil periodically.

Ask your dealer for more information on this issue.

2.5 Handling grease, oil, fuel and filters

Grease

- Grease ensures smooth operation of moving parts such as connectors and prevents operating noises.
- The nipples not listed on the pages for periodic service are those used for overhaul purposes. Normally it is not necessary to refill them.

Grease them if any abnormal condition arises after long term use.

• Wipe away all excess grease after greasing. Carefully wipe the excess grease from all moving parts which might be easily worn by adhered sand or grit.

Storing the oil and fuel

- Store the oil and fuel indoors so that they are not be contaminated by impurities such as water or dust.
- When you store oil or fuel in drums for a long period, position them so that their outlets align in a straight line (to prevent moisture absorption).

When storing the oil or the fuel outdoors, cover the drums with a waterproof sheet.

• To avoid deterioration caused by long-term storage, use the oil on a first-in first-out basis.

Filter

• The filters are very important parts which prevent impurities from getting into critical devices through the lube oil, fuel and air systems.

Replace the filter elements periodically according to the instructions of the Operation & Maintenance Manual.

Under difficult conditions, you need to replace the filter elements earlier than suggested in the Operation & Maintenance Manual depending on the type of oil and fuel (sulfur content).

- Never reuse the filter elements (cartridge type) by cleaning them.
- When replacing a filter element, confirm that no metallic dust or foreign solids are present on the old filter.
- If they are found to be present, contact the nearest dealer.
- Do not unpack the filter element before use.
- Use YANMAR genuine filter elements.

2.6 Electrical equipment

- If electrical equipment gets wet or wiring insulation is broken, electric leaks may occur and the machine may malfunction.
- Check the fan belt for tension and damage, and also check the battery for electrolyte level.
- Never disconnect or disassemble the electrical equipment mounted on the machine.
- Do not mount any electrical equipment other than those items provided by YANMAR.
- Be careful not to spray water on the electrical equipment when washing the machine or operating in the rain.
- After working near the sea, take necessary precautions to protect the electrical equipment from corrosion.

2.7 Hydraulic system

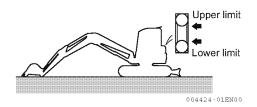
- The hydraulic system is hot during and immediately after operation. It is also under high pressure during operation. Therefore, check and service the hydraulic system carefully as follows:
 - Put the bucket on level ground so that no pressure is applied to the hydraulic cylinder circuits.
 - Be sure to stop the engine.
 - Wait until the temperature drops sufficiently before starting maintenance.

Do not suddenly remove any plugs, screws or connecting parts of the hoses. Otherwise oil may spout out due to residual internal pressure even when the oil temperature has lowered. Be careful not to stand in front of any plugs, screws or connecting parts when loosening them, to prevent injury. Loosen them gradually, to relieve the internal pressure.

- Always relieve the internal pressure before checking and servicing the hydraulic system.
- Check the hydraulic oil level, replace the filter element, and replace the hydraulic oil when necessary.
- After removing hydraulic hoses and piping, check the O-rings and the packing for damage before reinstalling them.

Replace them if they are damaged.

• Bleed air after replacing or cleaning the hydraulic oil filter element or strainer, repairing or replacing the hydraulic equipment, or reinstalling the hydraulic cylinder or piping. Retract the bucket and arm cylinders to place the bucket on the ground.



Bleed air according to the following procedure:

- **1.** Set the engine rotation to medium. That is, set the lever in the middle of the stroke.
- **2.** Slowly operate each cylinder 4 to 5 times to approximately 4 in. (100 mm) before both stroke ends.
- 3. Operate the cylinder 4 to 5 times at full stroke.
- Failure to bleed air from the hydraulic cylinder and operating it suddenly to the stroke ends could cause piston seal damage.
- If air is left in the hydraulic circuit, it will compress and expand and the hydraulic equipment will not operate smoothly.

Air in the hydraulic circuit may shorten the service life of the hydraulic pump.

4. Check the hydraulic oil level and replenish hydraulic oil to the specified level if necessary.

3. Consumables

Replace consumable parts such as filter element and bucket teeth periodically or earlier than wear limit.

Replace consumable parts securely to use our product more economically.

When you replace a part, be sure to use a Yanmar genuine part.

When ordering consumables, let us know the part numbers given in the parts catalog.

■ List of consumables

The numbers of parts in the parentheses represent those which must be replaced at the same time.

Item	Name	Q'ty	Replacing time interval
Engine oil filter	Filter 80×80 L	1	Every 500 service hours
Hydraulic oil tank filter	Filter element	1	Every 500 service hours (At first 250 service hours)
Line filter	Filter element	1	Every 1000 service hours
Fuel filter	FO filter 80×142 L	1	Every 500 service hours
Air cleaner	Cleaner element	1	Every 500 service hours
Pre-filter	Filter element	1	Every 500 service hours
Bucket	Point teeth (Pin) (Pin) Side cutter (left) Side cutter (right) (Bolt 22×62) (Nut 22)	4 (4) (4) 1 1 (6) (6)	_

4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range

4.1 Fuel and oil

Select fuel and oil based on to the air temperature range.

The prescribed amount of oil means the total amount of oil included in the piping and equipment. The amount of oil to be changed means the amount of oil replaced in checking and servicing. If you start the engine at air temperatures lower than 32°F (0°C), use SAE10W, SAE10W-30, or

SAE15W-40 even if the temperature in the daytime rises to 50°F (10°C) or so.

4.2 Cooling water

Because a YANMAR genuine long-life coolant (LLC) is added to the cooling water, you need not change it unless the temperature falls below -31°F (-35°C).

If the temperature falls below -31°F (-35°C), refer to Section "Cleaning the inside of the cooling system" on page 318 to control the density of the cooling water.

Part to be refilled	Oil type	(°F) (°C)	Recomn -4 (-20)	nendation -14 (-10)	s with reg 32 (0)	gard to te 50 (10)	emperatur 68 (20)	re ranges 86 (30)	Prescribed amount of oil	Amount of oil to be changed
Engine oil pan	Engine oil			SAE 10	W CJ-4 I SAE	10W-30	CJ-4		11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)	11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)
Travel reduction gear	Gear oil				SA	E 90 (GL	- 4)		2.22 Qts. (2.1 L) (For right and left each)	2.22 Qts. (2.1 L) (For right and left each)
Hydraulic oil system	Hydraulic oil					ISO VC	546		In the tank 15.8 Gals. (60 L) Other parts 14.5 Gals. (55 L)	15.9 Gals. (60 L)
Fuel tank	Light oil			No. 1-	D or No.	2-D dies	el fuel		30.4 Gals. (115 L)	-
Cooling system	Water		YANN	/IAR genu	ine long-	-life coola	ant (LLC)	added	Radiator 10.7 Qts. (10.2 L) Subtank 0.4 Qts. (0.4 L)	-

5. Standard Tightening Torque for Bolts and Nuts

5.1 Required tools

The following tools are required for servicing:

No.	Name	Part number	Q'ty
1	Screwdriver (replaceable head)	104200-92350	1
2	Filter wrench 68	119332-92751	1
3	Filter wrench 80	119640-92750	1
4	Filter wrench LO	171301-92750	1
5	Pressure nozzle	172122-05101	1
6	Wrench 8×10	28110-080100	1
7	Wrench 12×14	28110-120140	2
8	Wrench 17×19	28110-170190	1
9	Wrench 22 \times 24	28110-220240	2
10	Wrench 27 \times 30	28110-270300	1
11	Wrench 32×36	28110-320360	1
12	Hexagon socket screw key 4	28150-040000	1
13	Hexagon socket screw key 5	28150-050000	1
14	Hexagon socket screw key 8	28150-080000	1
15	Box wrench 27×140	28227-271400	1
16	Turning handle 12×250	28230-120250	1
17	Grease hose	933110-09701	1
18	Grease injector 800	933110-09802	1
19	Pliers 200	933171-00470	1

5.2 Torque table

Bolts or nuts in the metric system should be tightened at the torque described below unless otherwise specified.

ltem		Thread size $ imes$ pitch	Tightening torque ft•lbf (N•m)	Remarks
Hexagon bolt (7T)	Coarse	M6×1	7.2 to 8.7 (9.8 to 11.8)	Apply 80% tightening torque
Nut	threads	M8×1.25	16.7 to 20.9 (22.6 to 28.4)	when tightened to aluminum.Apply 60% tightening torque
		M10×1.5	32.5 to 43.4 (44.1 to 58.8)	for 4T bolt and lock nut. • Use fine threads for engine
		M12×1.75	58 to 72.4 (78.5 to 98.1)	only.
		M14×2	86.8 to 108.5 (117.7 to 147.1)	
		M16×2	123 to 151.9 (166.7 to 206.0)	
		M18×2.5	173.6 to 209.8 (235.4 to 284.4)	
		M20×2.5	238.7 to 296.6 (323.6 to 402.1)	
	Fine threads	M14×1.5	94 to 108.5 (127.5 to 147.1)	
		M16×1.5	155.5 to 177.2 (210.8 to 240.3)	
PT plug		1/8	7.2 (9.8)	
		1/4	14.5 (19.6)	
		3/8	21.7 (29.4)	-
		1/2	43.4 (58.8)	
Pipe joint bolt	Pipe joint bolt		9.4 to 12.3 (12.7 to 16.7)	
		M12	18.1 to 25.3 (24.5 to 34.3)	_
		M14	28.9 to 36.1 (39.2 to 49)	_
		M16	36.1 to 43.4 (49.0 to 58.8)	

IMPORTANT

If a part to be tightened is made of resin like a panel board, excessive tightening torque may damage the tightened part. Be careful when tightening.

6. Replacing Essential Parts Periodically

For safe operation, the machine must be serviced periodically. To increase safety, be sure to periodically replace the parts listed in the table of safety parts on the next page. A fire could result if they deteriorate or are damaged.

These parts are vulnerable to age and wear or deterioration and it is difficult to determine the degree to which they have deteriorated on the occasion of periodic service. To maintain their proper function at all times, therefore, replace them with new ones after using them for a specific period of time even if no abnormality is found with the parts.

If you find abnormalities in these parts before their scheduled replacement time is reached, repair or replace them immediately.

If a hose clamp is deformed or cracked, replace it immediately.

Check the hydraulic hoses (which are not periodic replacement parts). If any abnormality is found in them, retighten them or replace them immediately.

When replacing the hydraulic hoses, replace the O-rings and seals at the same time.

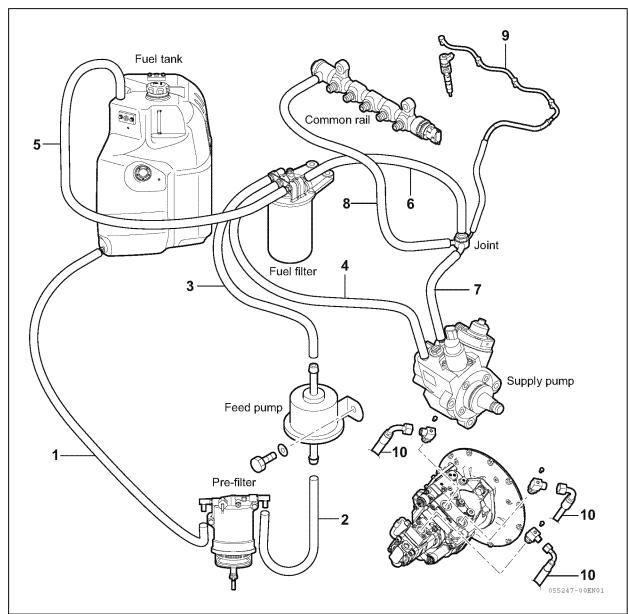
For further information about replacing the safety parts, ask your dealer.

Check the fuel and hydraulic hoses according to the periodic schedule described below.

Check categories	Check points
Start-up check	Oil leak from the connections or bodies of the fuel and hydraulic hoses
Voluntary monthly check	Oil leak from the connections or bodies of the fuel and hydraulic hoses Damage (crack, wear, or peeling) of the fuel and hydraulic hoses
Prescribed annual check	Oil leak from the connections or bodies of the fuel and hydraulic hoses Interference, crushing, aging, torsion, or damage (crack, wear, or peeling) of the fuel and hydraulic hoses

No.	Essential parts to be replaced periodically	Q'ty	Replacement time intervals
1	Fuel hose (fuel tank to pre-filter)	1	
2	Fuel hose (pre-filter to feed pump)	1	
3	Fuel hose (feed pump to fuel filter)	1	
4	Fuel hose (fuel filter to supply pump)	1	
5	Fuel hose (fuel filter to fuel tank)	1	Earlier of either every 2 years or every
6	Fuel hose (joint to fuel filter)	1	2000 service hours
7	Fuel hose (joint to supply pump)	1	
8	Fuel hose (common rail to joint)	1	
9	Fuel hose (injectors to joint)	1	
10	Main pump outlet hose (P1, P2, P3 to C/V)	3	

■ List of essential parts



MAINTENANCE

7. Maintenance Table

Daily and periodic inspection are important to keep the machine in its best condition. The following is a summary of inspection and servicing requirements by inspection interval. Periodic inspection intervals vary depending on the use, loads, fuels and lube oils used and handling conditions, and are hard to establish definitively. The following should be treated only as a general standard. When the time for an inspection approaches, study the relevant pages in the Operation & Maintenance Manual. Keep a record of daily operation and the results of maintenance work.

7.1 Table of service time intervals

Check and service points	Page
At first 100 hours (only once after the new machine has started to b	e used)

Replacing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox277

■ At first 250 hours (only once after the new machine has started to be used)

Replacing the hydraulic oil return filter element	277
Cleaning the suction filter element in the hydraulic oil tank	277

Nonperiodic servicing

Checking the rubber crawlers (for rubber crawler types)	278
Checking and adjusting the rubber crawler tension	280
Replacing the rubber crawler	283
Checking and adjusting the steel crawler tension	286
Replacing the bucket teeth	289
Maintenance, inspection and servicing of air conditioner	291
Checking and cleaning DPF soot filter	Ask your dealer

■ Checking before start-up

Checking and replenishing the cooling water	145
Checking and draining the pre-filter	146
Checking and replenishing the engine oil	147
Checking and replenishing the fuel in the fuel tank	148
Checking and replenishing the hydraulic oil tank	149
Checking and adjusting the fan belt tension	151
Checking and replenishing the battery electrolyte	153
Greasing	154
Checking the electrical equipment	155

Check and service points	Page
--------------------------	------

■ Every 50 hours

Greasing the swing gear and the swing bearing	298
Draining the water and deposits in the fuel tank	298

■ Every 100 hours

(Perform the same maintenance as indicated for every 50 service hours)	299
--	-----

■ Every 250 hours

Checking and cleaning the air cleaner	299
Checking and replenishing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox	301
Checking and cleaning the radiator fin	302

■ Every 500 hours

Replacing the pre-filter element	303
Replacing the fuel filter element	305
Replacing the engine oil and the engine oil filter element	307
Replacing the air cleaner element	309
Replacing the hydraulic oil return filter element	310

■ Every 1000 hours

Replacing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox	311
Replacing the hydraulic oil and cleaning the suction filter element	313
Replacing the line filter	316
Checking and adjusting the intake/exhaust valve clearances	Ask your dealer

■ Every 1500 hours

Checking crankcase breather system	Ask your dealer
Cleaning EGR cooler	Ask your dealer

■ Every 2000 hours

Cleaning the inside of the cooling system	318
Checking the accumulator	322
Checking and replacing fuel piping, cooling water piping	Ask your dealer
Lapping the intake/exhaust valves	Ask your dealer

■ Every 3000 hours

Checking turbocharger	Ask your dealer
Checking, cleaning and testing EGR valve	Ask your dealer
Cleaning EGR lead valve	Ask your dealer
Checking and testing intake throttle valve	Ask your dealer
Checking and cleaning fuel injector	Ask your dealer

■ List of periodic inspection and servicing

			◇ : Ch	eck O:	Supply	● : Rep	lace 🗆 :	Adjust ((clean) ∎	∎ : Oil &	grease
	Check & service i	tems	Daily	Every 50 hrs	Every 100 hrs		Every 500 hrs	Every 1000 hrs	Every 1500 hrs	Every 2000 hrs	Every 3000 hrs
General	Check falling off, breakage of parts		\diamond								
	Check loosened retighten		\diamond								
	Check engine con	dition	\diamond								
	Clean										
Fuel oil	Check & supply of	♦(O)									
	Drain the fuel tank										
	Pre-filter	Check, drain	\diamond								
		Replace					•				
	Replace the fuel fi	lter element					•				
Lube oil	Engine oil	Check, resupply	\diamond								
		Replace					•				
	Replace the engine oil filter ele- ment						•				
	Travel reduction	Check, resupply				0					
	gear oil	Replace			● 1st time			•			
Cooling	Check & supply of cooling water		\diamond								
water	Check cooling wat	er leakage	\diamond								
	Check & clean rad	liator fins									
	Check & adjust the	e fan-belt tension	(□)								
	Clean & check the cooling water system, and replace the cooling water									● within two years	
Rubber hose	Check & replace f ing water pipe	uel oil pipe, cool-	\diamond							•	
Air	Clean air cleaner										
cleaner	Replace air cleane	er element					•				
Hydraulic	Hydraulic oil	Check, resupply	\diamond								
system	Clean suction filter	Replace						•			
	Replace return filter					1st time	•				
						1st time	•	•			
	Replace line filter Check for abnormality of hydraulic pump		\diamond								
	Check function of accumulator									\diamond	
Grease	Check grease-up	oositions, grease									
	Greasing the swing gears and the swing bearings										
Undercar- riage			\diamond								

							 ·	_	-
	Check & service items	Daily	Every 50 hrs	Every 100 hrs	Every 250 hrs	Every 500 hrs	Every 1500 hrs	Every 2000 hrs	Every 3000 hrs
Control equip- ment	Check performance, play of travel lever (pedal)	\diamond							
	Check performance, play of control levers	\diamond							
	Check performance, play of blade lever	\diamond							
	Check performance, play of boom swing pedal	\diamond							
	Check performance of engine con- trol dial	\diamond							
Electric equip- ment	Check work lights, horn	\diamond							
	Check hour meter function	\diamond							
	Check function of LCD monitor	\diamond							
	Check LED lamps	\diamond							
	Check wire breakage, short-cir- cuits, loosened terminals retighten	\diamond							
	Check, resupply battery fluid	\diamond							
Engine	Check & adjust intake and exhaust valve clearance								
	Lap the intake and exhaust valve seats							⇔As required	
	Check turbocharger								\diamond
	Check, clean and test EGR valve								
	Clean EGR lead valve								
	Clean EGR cooler								
	Check crankcase breather system						\diamond		
	Check & test intake throttle valve								\diamond
	Check & clean fuel injector								\diamond
	Check & clean DPF soot filter *1								

\diamondsuit : Check	⊖ : Supply	• : Replace	e 🗆 : Adjust (c	clean) 🔳 : (Oil & grease
------------------------	------------	-------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------

*1: Inspect the DPF soot filter when the relevant error code is displayed. For details, refer to **3.26 Handling diesel par**ticulate filter (DPF) on page 220.

Note :

- When machine is used at dusty worksites, clean and replace filter element twice as often as specified in the table.
- Execution of periodic inspection and servicing is indispensable to assuring conformance to EPA emission control regulations.

Keep a record of the results.

7.2 Service intervals when using the hydraulic breaker

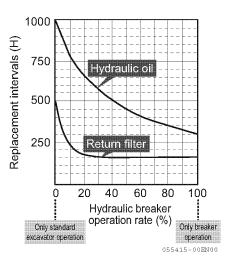
When a hydraulic breaker is used, the hydraulic oil deteriorates earlier than in usual bucket excavating work. Set up the service time intervals as follows:

• Replacing the hydraulic oil return filter element

Replace the hydraulic oil return filter element on the new machine once after the first 100 to 150 hours. After that, replace it in accordance with the chart at the right.

 Replacing the hydraulic oil in the hydraulic oil tank

Replace the hydraulic oil in accordance with the chart at the right.



8. Procedures for Maintenance

8.1 First services

Service a new machine at 100 and 250 hours, as follows:

At first 100 hours

• Replacing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox.

For this procedures, refer to Section "8.8 Maintenance every 1000 service hours".

■ At first 250 hours

- Replacing hydraulic return filter element. For this procedure, refer to Section "8.7 Maintenance every 500 service hours".
- Cleaning the suction filter element in the hydraulic oil tank.

For this procedure, refer to Section "8.8 Maintenance every 1000 service hours".

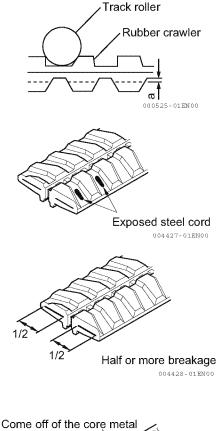
8.2 Nonperiodic services

Checking the rubber crawlers (for rubber crawler types)

Rubber crawlers in the following condition require repair or replacement. Ask your dealer to repair or replace them.

Height of lugs

- As the lug height "a" is reduced by wear, the tractive force decreases.
 If "a" becomes 0.2 in. (5 mm) or less, replace the crawler with a new one.
- If two or more links of the steel cord inside the crawler are exposed due to wear of the lugs, replace the crawler with a new one.



Rubber crawler steel cord breakage

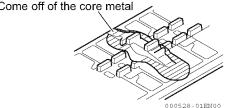
If half or more of either of the steel cords is broken, replace the rubber crawler with a new one.

Separation of the core metal of the rubber crawler

If the core metal of the rubber crawler separates even at one place, replace the rubber crawler with a new one.

■ Rubber crawler tension

If the rubber crawler tension is habitually loose even after grease is injected, the grease adjuster may be defective internally. Ask your dealer to repair the grease adjuster.

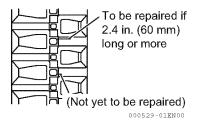


Crack in the rubber crawler

If a crack occurs between any lugs of the rubber crawler, repair it if the crack length reaches approximately 2.4 in. (60 mm). If the inside steel cord is exposed even though the crack is small, repair the rubber crawler immediately.

If the crack length is less than 1.2 in. (30 mm) or the crack depth is less than 0.4 in. (10 mm), you do not need to repair the rubber crawler.

For a decision on whether the rubber crawler should be replaced, repaired or should continue to be used, ask your dealer.



Checking and adjusting the rubber crawler tension

- When adjusting the rubber crawler tension while raising the machine, do not support the machine with the implement only.
 The control levers could move or the hydraulic oil could flow out accidentally so that the machine would fall.
- When raising the machine, support it with safety blocks of sufficient strength. When the machine is being checked or

adjusted by two persons, one must operate the machine in response to signs from the other.

How a rubber crawler wears out depends on the working conditions and the nature of the ground. Be sure to check the rubber crawlers for wear and tension from time to time.

When a new rubber crawler is mounted, perform the first check after 30 hours operation.

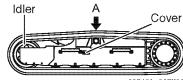
Checking the rubber crawler tension

- **1.** Move the machine so that the joint (<u>M</u> mark) on the inside surface of the rubber crawler is positioned at the upper center of the track frame.
- **2.** Lift the machine with the implement and the safety blocks.

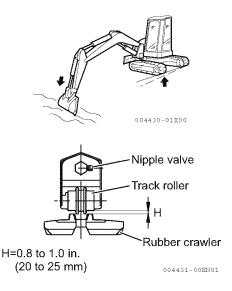
To do this, operate the control lever slowly.

3. The crawler tension is proper when the clearance between the surfaces of the third track roller from the idler and the rubber crawler is 0.8 to 1.0 in. (20 to 25 mm).

Operating the machine with the tension of any of the rubber crawlers too loose may cause the rubber crawler to come off and accelerate core bar wear. A : 'A' mark inside rubber crawler



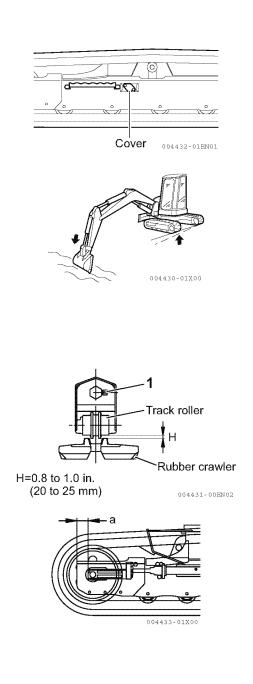
057421-00EN00



If the tension is improper, adjust it as follows:

■ Adjusting the rubber crawler tension

- To increase the tension
- Prepare a grease gun.
 - 1. Remove the cover.
 - Raise the machine using the implement and the safety blocks. Inject grease through the nipple valve 1 using a grease gun until the rubber crawler tension has achieved a clearance (H) that is within the following range : 0.8 to 1.0 in. (20 to 25 mm).
 - **3.** To check that the tension is proper, lower the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.
 - **4.** Check the rubber crawler tension again. If the tension is improper, adjust it again.
 - 5. Install the cover.
 - 6. The tension is adjustable until the clearance "a" is reduced to 0 in. (0 mm). If the tension is still loose, the rubber crawler may need repairing due to excessive wear. Contact your dealer and ask for repair.
 - 7. If the tension is loose even after grease injection, it is necessary to replace either the rubber crawler or the grease adjuster. Contact your dealer for assistance.



Loosening the tension

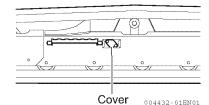
- Grease is under high pressure. If the nipple valve (1) is opened suddenly, grease could be ejected or the valve could blow, which could cause bodily injury.
- Do not rely on valve appearance alone to determine whether or not grease has been discharged, but check that by measuring the tension of the rubber crawler.
- Do not open the nipple valve (1) more than one turn.
- It is very dangerous to discharge the grease by any procedure other than that described below.

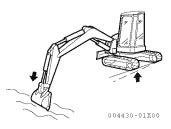
If the tension of the rubber crawler cannot be loosened, contact your dealer and ask for repair.

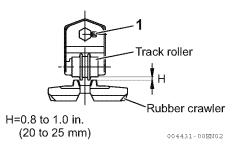
- 1. Remove the cover.
- 2. Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks. Slowly loosen the nipple valve 1 and discharge the grease to adjust the rubber crawler tension and to achieve clearance (H) that is within the following range : 0.8 to 1.0 in. (20 to 25 mm).
- **3.** Never loosen the nipple valve more than one turn.

(If the grease is not discharging properly, lower the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.)

- **4.** Tighten the nipple valve **1**.Tightening torque : 43.5 to 64.9 ft•lbf (59 to 88 N•m)
- **5.** To check that the tension is proper, lower the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.
- 6. Recheck the rubber crawler tension and readjust it if necessary.
- 7. Completely wipe away all of the discharged grease.







IMPORTANT

The rubber crawler is not grease-resistant. Completely wipe away all of the grease because grease will shorten its service life.

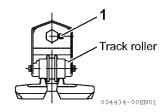
8. Install the cover.

Replacing the rubber crawler

- To replace the rubber crawler with a new one, work with a partner. You must operate the machine in response to signs from your partner.
- Because the rubber crawler is replaced with the machine in a raised position, there is a danger that the machine may accidentally fall. Do not move any parts other than the rubber crawler to be replaced in doing the job.
- The high internal pressure of the grease can cause the nipple valve to eject.
 When you loosen the nipple valve (1), do not loosen it more than one turn.
- At this point, do not loosen any parts other than the nipple valve (1). Also, do not turn your face toward the nipple valve (1).
- If the tension of the rubber crawler cannot be loosened by the procedure described here, ask your dealer to repair the rubber crawler.

Replacing the rubber crawler

• Prepare a grease gun and steel pipes.



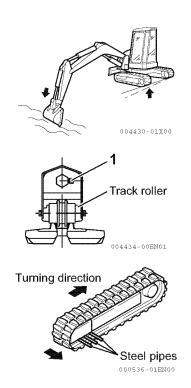
Removing the rubber crawler

A WARNING

- It is very dangerous to discharge the grease by any procedure other than that described below.
- If the tension of the rubber crawler cannot be properly adjusted, ask your dealer to repair or replace the rubber crawler.
- When removing the rubber crawler, make sure that all of the grease has been completely discharged before turning the sprocket.
- **1.** Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks.

To do this, slowly operate the control lever.

- **2.** Loosen the nipple valve **1** little by little to gradually discharge the grease.
- **3.** Never loosen the nipple valve **1** more than one turn.
- 4. Insert the steel pipes into the rubber crawler and turn the sprocket in the reverse direction. When the rubber crawler is separated from the idler by the steel pipes, slide the rubber crawler off.

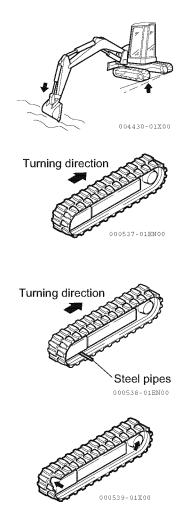


Installing the rubber crawler

1. Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks.

To do this, slowly operate the control lever.

- **2.** Engage the rubber crawler with the sprocket, and place the rubber crawler on the idler.
- **3.** Rotate the sprocket in the reverse direction to push the rubber crawler in, and then stop rotating it.
- **4.** Insert a steel pipe into the rubber crawler, and rotate the sprocket again to place the rubber crawler on the idler.
- **5.** Stop rotating the sprocket, and confirm that the rubber crawler is securely positioned on both the sprocket and the idler.
- **6.** Adjust the rubber crawler tension, referring to Section "Checking and adjusting the rubber crawler tension" on page 280.
- 7. Confirm that the rubber crawler is fully engaged with both the sprocket and the idler, and that the rubber crawler tension is sufficient. Then lower the machine to the ground.



Checking and adjusting the steel crawler tension

A WARNING

- When adjusting the steel crawler tension while raising the machine, do not support the machine with the implement only. The control levers could move or the hydraulic oil could flow out accidentally so that the machine would fall.
- When raising the machine, support it with safety blocks of sufficient strength.
- When the machine is being checked or adjusted by two persons, one must operate the machine in response to the signs from the other.

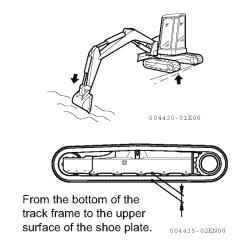
How the pins and bushings on the steel crawler will wear down depends on the working conditions and the ground conditions. Check the steel crawler tension from time to time to keep proper tension.

Check and adjust the steel crawler tension under the same conditions as in operation (for example, mud clogged condition if working in muddy ground.)

■ Checking the steel crawler

- **1.** Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks. To do this, operate the control lever slowly.
- 2. From a position that will be safe even if the machine should fall, measure the clearance between the bottom of the track frame and the upper surface of the shoe plate.

The tension is proper if the clearance is 5.91 to 6.30 in. (150 to 160 mm).



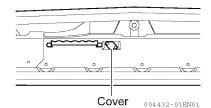
If the tension is improper, adjust it as follows:

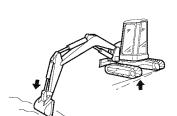
■ Adjusting the steel crawler tension

- To increase the tension
- Prepare a grease gun.
 - 1. Remove the cover.

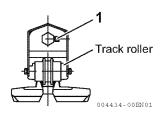
- Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks. Inject grease from the nipple valve 1 with a grease gun until the steel crawler tension has achieved a clearance that is within the following range : 5.91 to 6.30 in. (150 to 160 mm).
- **3.** To check that the tension is proper, lower the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.
- **4.** Check the steel crawler tension again. If the tension is improper, adjust it again.
- 5. Install the cover.
- 6. The tension can be adjusted until the clearance "a" is reduced to 0 in. (0 mm). If the tension is still loose after adjustment, the pin and the bushing should be replaced because they are probably worn excessively.

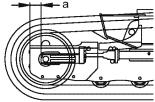
Ask your dealer to repair the crawler.





004430-01X00





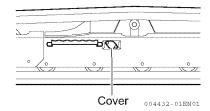
004433-01X00

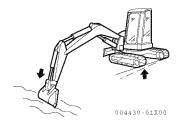
Loosening the tension

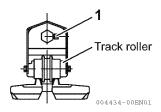
- Grease is under high pressure. If the nipple valve (1) is opened suddenly, grease could be ejected or the valve could blow, which could cause bodily injury.
- Do not rely on valve appearance alone to determine whether or not grease has been discharged, but check that by measuring the tension of the steel crawler. Do not open the nipple valve (1) more than one turn.
- It is very dangerous to discharge the grease by any procedure other than that described below. If the tension of the steel crawler cannot be loosened, ask your dealer to repair the steel crawler.
- 1. Remove the cover.
- 2. Raise the machine with the implement and the safety blocks. Slowly loosen the nipple valve 1 and to discharge the grease to adjust the steel crawler tension and to achieve a clearance that is within the following range : 5.91 to 6.30 in. (150 to 160 mm).
- **3.** Never loosen the nipple valve **1** more than one turn.

(If the grease is not discharging properly, lower the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.)

- **4.** Tighten the nipple valve 1.Tightening torque : 43.5 to 64.9 ft•lbf (59 to 88 N•m)
- **5.** To check that the tension is proper, put down the machine and move the machine back and forth slightly.
- **6.** Recheck the steel crawler tension and readjust it if necessary.
- **7.**Completely wipe away all of the discharged grease.
- 8. Install the cover.







Replacing the bucket teeth

When the bucket teeth are worn, replace them in accordance with the following procedure:

A WARNING

When replacing the bucket teeth, be careful not to move the implement by mistake, for safety reasons.

Place the implement in a stable position, stop the engine, and securely lock the lock lever.

Replacing the point type teeth

Replace the point type teeth before they are worn down to the adapter.

- Position the bucket so that the bottom is level.
- To remove a point :
- Strike out the locking pin 3 which connects the point type tooth 1 to the adapter 4, using a hammer and a pointed tool for easy removal.

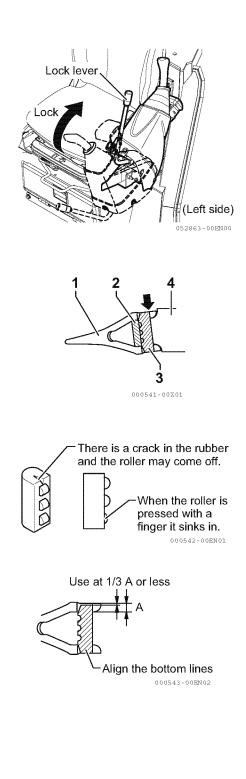
IMPORTANT

Do not strike the pin toward the rubber pin lock (2). Otherwise the rubber pin lock may be damaged. Strike the pin in the opposite direction.

- 2. Remove the rubber pin lock 2.
- **3.** Check the condition of the rubber pin lock **2** and locking pin **3**.

Replace a damaged rubber pin lock or locking pin. Using a faulty rubber pin lock or locking pin may cause a point to come off during operation. Replace a rubber pin lock or a locking pin if the following faults are present :

- There is a crack in the rubber of the pin lock, as the roller may come off.
- When the roller is pressed with a finger, it sinks into the rubber.
- The locking pin is too short.



- **4.** Clean the surface of adapter **4** with a putty knife to remove any hard mud on it.
- 5. Press-fit the rubber pin lock 2 into the hole of adapter 4 by hand or with a hammer.

IMPORTANT

Do not let the rubber pin lock extend beyond the adapter surface.

6. Fit the point 1 onto adapter 4 and check that the rear surface of the pin bore of the point is aligned with the rear surface of the pin bore in the adapter when the point is pressed firmly.

IMPORTANT

If the rear surface of the pin bore of the point (1) is in front of the rear surface of the pin bore in adapter (4), do not strike locking pin (3).

- 7. Press-fit locking pin 3 in the pin hole of point 1 so that the upper end of the locking pin is flush with the surface of the point.
- Replace the rubber pin lock and the locking pin with new ones when replacing a point, to prevent the point from coming off.

Replacing the side cutter

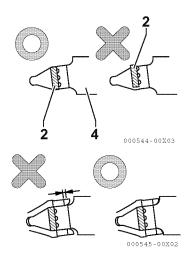
Delay in replacing the side cutter could damage the bucket.

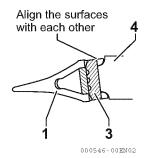
Replace the side cutter before the bucket is damaged.

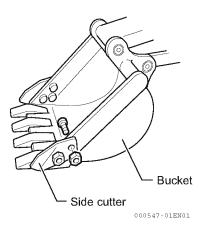
Tightening torque :

651.01 to 795.65 ft•lbf (882.6 to 1078.7 N•m) Screw lock agent : Loctite 262

• Replace the bolts, nuts and spring washers when replacing the side cutter.







Maintenance, inspection and servicing of air conditioner

Daily maintenance and periodic inspection and servicing are required for the air conditioner to use it comfortably in the best condition.

Proper maintenance allows reduction in trouble and longer life of the air conditioner.

Exact inspection and servicing prevent trouble and reduce the cost for repair.

The air conditioner should also be checked and serviced at the time of a voluntary monthly inspection and a prescribed annual inspection of the machine.

It is recommended that the rubber hoses and electrical wires should be replaced every two years to use the air conditioner in the best condition.

List of inspection items for air conditioner

	Part	Check item	Servicing	
	Filter	Check the filter for clogging.	Clean	
Daily	Condenser	Check the cover and the fin for contamination and clogging.	Clean	
inspection	Compressor driving belt	Check the belt for tension and damage.	Repair or replace	
	Sight glass	Check the refrigerant quantity.	-	

Replacing the inner and outer air filters

- **1.** Grab the knobs of the filter and pull it out to this side.
- **2.** Blow off the clogged dirt or the like with compressed air.

Inner air filter can be washed off with water. Outer air filter can NOT be washed off with water.

3. Reinstall the cleaned filter.

Note:

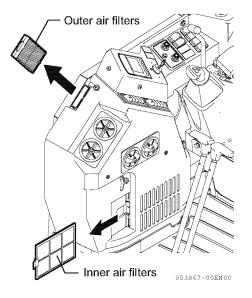
When washing the cabin floor or other parts with water, be sure to cover the inner air filter to protect it from muddy water splashes.

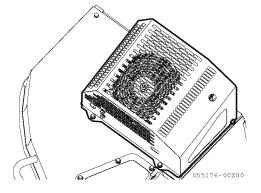
Checking and cleaning condenser

- Be sure to stop the engine and remove the starter switch key before checking and servicing the condenser.
- Be sure to reinstall the cover and other parts, which have been removed for checking and servicing, to their original positions after completion of the work.

Check the condenser cover. If there is any mud or dirt on the cover, then remove the cover to wash it off with water.

- If there is some mud or dirt on the condenser fin, it will cause degradation of the air conditioner performance. Wash it off from the fin with water, using a soft brush.
- If the condenser fin is crushed or deformed, it will also cause degradation of the air conditioner performance. Repair it with a screwdriver or the like, taking care not to damage the condenser fin.





Checking and servicing compressor driving belt

WARNING

Stop the engine and remove the starter switch key before checking and servicing the compressor driving belt.

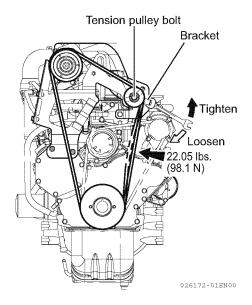
Press the compressor driving belt in the middle to check the slack of the compressor driving belt.

Driving belt

Pressing force : Approximately 22.05 lbs. (98.1 N) Correct slack : 0.75 to 0.79 in. (19 to 20 mm)

If the slack of the belt is not correct, adjust it according to the following procedure :

- Open the engine hood rear cover and press the belt in the middle with a force of approximately 22.05 lbs. (98.1 N). Adjust the belt tension by loosening the tension pulley bolt and applying a wrench or the like to the protruding portion of bracket so that the slack of the belt will be correct.
 - If the belt tension cannot be adjusted to the specified slack because the belt has lost its elasticity, replace the belt with a new one.
- 2. Tighten the tension pulley bolt.
- **3.** Check whether each pulley or the belt is damaged, especially whether the belt is in contact with the bottom of the pulley groove.
 - If there are any cuts on the belt or cracks in it, replace it with a new one.



- 4. If a new compressor driving belt has been installed, be sure to adjust the belt tension within the specified range for new driving compressor belt tension shown below and then run the engine for at least five minutes. After that, check again whether the belt tension is within the specified range for used compressor driving belt tension shown blow. Readjust the belt tension, if necessary.
 - New compressor driving belt tension: 0.59 to 0.63 in. (15 to 16 mm)
 - Used compressor driving belt tension: 0.75 to 0.79 in. (19 to 20 mm)

Compressor driving belt : Mitsuboshi Rawedge moulded cogged V-belt RECMF-1640 or its equivalent Yanmar part number : 172B12-18200

■ Checking the refrigerant quantity

Through the top of the condenser cover, observe the flow of the refrigerant air bubble from the sight glass (inspection window) of the liquid tank according to the following procedure to check the refrigerant quantity.

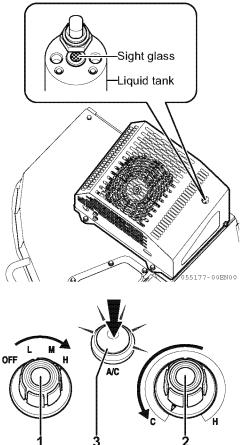
- **1.**Start the engine and run it at the maximum speed.
- 2. Set the fan switch 1 at the H level.
- **3.** Set the temperature control dial **2** to the C position. (Full counterclockwise position.)
- **4.** Turn the air conditioner switch **3** ON. (The lamp goes on.)
- **5.** Check the refrigerant condition from the sight glass and compare it with the check list shown below.

IMPORTANT

If the refrigerant quantity is not normal, ask your dealer for check and repair.

Refrigerant type : R-134a

Quantity : 1.54 to 1.76 lbs. (700 to 800 g)



Air conditioner condition	Normal		Abnormal	
Temperatures of high and low pressure pipes	Temperature difference is big. High pressure pipe: hot Low pressure pipe: cold Compressor discharge side temperature: 158°F (70°C) Compressor intake side temperature: 41°F (5°C)	High pressure pipe is warm and low pressure pipe is rather cool. Temperature difference is not so big.	There is almost no dif- ference in temperature between high and low pressure pipes.	High pressure pipe is hot and low pressure pipe is rather warm. There is some difference in temperature between them.
Sight glass	Almost transparent. Even if air bubble flow is seen, it becomes trans- parent as the engine speed changes.	Air bubble flow is always seen. It is sometimes transparent or white.	Flow of mist or the like is seen slightly.	No air bubble flow is seen even cabin win- dows, idling engine, and rotating fan to the maxi- mum.
Pipe connec- tion	Normal	Some parts are contam- inated by oil.	Some parts are badly contaminated by oil.	Normal
Refrigerant quantity	Refrigerant quantity is adequate and normal.	Refrigerant might leak in a small amount from some part.		Refrigerant quantity is too large.

- *1 :When the outside air temperature is low, air bubble might be seen even if the refrigerant quantity is adequate.
- *2 :When there is no refrigerant, no air bubble is seen, either. Therefore, be sure to check the difference in temperature between the high and low pressure pipes.

Checking and cleaning DPF soot filter

Ask your dealer for checking and cleaning.

8.3 Checking before start-up

Check the items described below before starting the engine first in a day.

For details of the following items, refer to Section "Checking before start-up" on page 145 of "OPERATION" PART.

- Checking and replenishing the cooling water
- Checking and draining the pre-filter
- Checking and replenishing the engine oil
- Checking and replenishing the fuel in the fuel tank
- Checking and replenishing the hydraulic oil tank
- Checking and adjusting the fan belt tension
- Checking and replenishing the battery electrolyte
- Greasing
- Checking the electrical equipment

8.4 Maintenance every 50 service hours

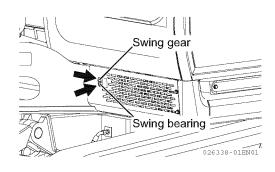
Greasing the swing gear and the swing bearing

A WARNING

Do not swing the upperstructure while greasing.

Swing the upperstructure after each stage of greasing is completed to avoid serious bodily injury.

- **1.** Grease the swing gear and bearing through the grease nipples indicated with arrows in the figure at the right, using a grease gun.
- **2.** Swing the upperstructure in small increments and grease after each stop, until the upper-structure has made a full revolution.



Draining the water and deposits in the fuel tank

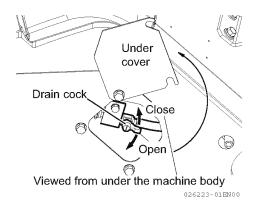
Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away.

Things to prepare

- Container for fuel waste
- **1.** Swing the upperstructure so that the drain plug under the fuel tank is positioned in the middle of the right and left crawlers.
- **2.** Loosen the bolts to move the under cover in the direction of an arrow.
- **3.** Put the container for fuel waste under the hose for the drain cock.
- **4.**Open the drain cock to discharge the water and dirt deposits in the fuel tank.

Take care that the fuel does not contact your body.

5. When clean fuel starts coming out, close the drain cock and close the under cover.



8.5 Maintenance every 100 service hours

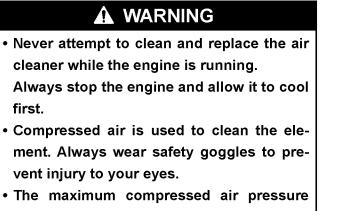
Perform the same maintenance as indicated for every 50 service hours.

8.6 Maintenance every 250 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50 service hours.

Checking and cleaning the air

cleaner

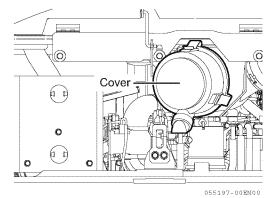


 The maximum compressed air pressure should be less than 100 PSI (0.7 MPa) for cleaning purposes.

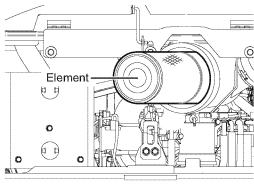
Cleaning procedure for element

- 1. Open the engine hood.
- 2. Remove the clips and remove the cover.
- 3. Remove the element.

Cover the connector side in the back of the air cleaner body with a waste cloth and tape to prevent dirt from entering.



4. Clean the cover and the inside of the body.

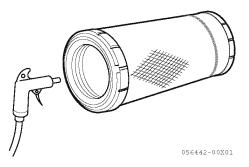


055203-00EN00

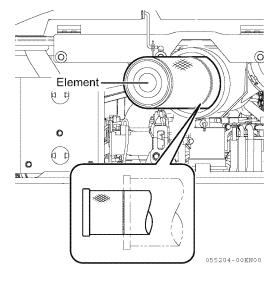
- **5.** Blow the dry, compressed air [100 PSI (0.7 MPa) or less] from inside the element along the pleats to initially remove the dirt. Then blow compressed air from outside the element along the pleats to remove dirt. Blow compressed air again from inside the element, to complete the dirt removal.
- **6.** After cleaning, illuminate the element from inside with a light bulb and check it. If there are any small holes or thin areas, replace the element with a new one.

IMPORTANT

- When cleaning the element, do not tap it or strike it against other objects. Otherwise the element may be damaged.
- Do not reuse the element if the pleat, gasket or seal is damaged.
- Replacement elements should be wrapped in clean paper and stored in a dry place.
- **7.** Remove the protective cloth and tape used to cover the air cleaner body.
- **8.** Insert the newly-cleaned element until the overlap position of red line in the element and end face of the air cleaner case.
- **9.** Install the cover, using the arrow mark on it, to confirm proper alignment.
- 10. Close the engine hood.







Checking and replenishing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox

• The gear oil and casing of the reduction gearbox are hot immediately after ceasing machine operation and can cause bodily injury such as a burn.

Do not allow hot oil or the gearbox to contact your skin.

Replace the oil after the oil and the gearbox have cooled enough to permit touching the surface of the gearbox casing with your bare hand.

• At operating temperature, the reduction gearbox is hot and its contents are under pressure.

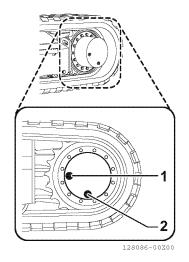
In such condition, the oil or a plug may be ejected violently, causing bodily injury. Loosen a plug slowly to gradually relieve the residual pressure.

■ Things to prepare

- Container for oil
- Oil jug
- **1.** Place the machine so that the oil drain port **2** will be in the lowest position, as illustrated in the right figure.
- 2. Place the container for oil under the level port 1.
- Remove the level port 1 plug using a hexagon socket screw key and check that the oil level reaches the lower end of the plug port.
- When the oil quantity is insufficient, replenish gear oil through the level port 1 until gear oil overflows from the level port 1.

See Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267 for the oil to be used.

5. Install the plug. Tightening torque : 57.9 to 86.8 ft•lbf (78.5 to 117.7 N•m)



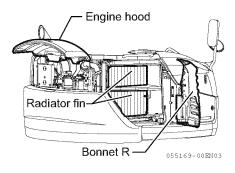
Checking and cleaning the radiator fin

A WARNING

- Never attempt to check and clean the radiator fin while the engine is running.
 Always stop the engine and allow it to cool first, before checking and cleaning it.
- Compressed air can cause bodily injury since the objects around the radiator fin may scatter.
- Whenever using compressed air for cleaning, check that there are no other persons nearby, and always wear safety goggles and protective clothing and shoes.
- The maximum compressed air pressure should be less than 100 PSI (0.7 MPa) for cleaning purposes.
- 1. Open the engine hood before opening the bonnet R.
- **2.** Clean off any mud, dirt or leaves clogged in the radiator fin by blowing compressed air or by flushing with steam.

IMPORTANT

- Always blow the compressed air away from the fin to prevent damage to the fin.
- A damaged fin will cause water leakage and overheating.
- **3.** Check that the radiator fins are straight and that all the dirt has been removed completely.
- **4.** Close the bonnet R before closing the engine hood.



8.7 Maintenance every 500 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50, 100, and 250 service hours.

Replacing the pre-filter element

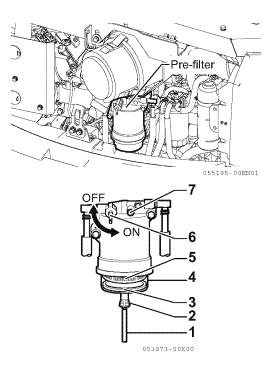
- Keep sparks flames and lit cigarettes away.
- Drain and replace the pre-filter element after engine has cooled down.
- Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surface or electrical components could cause a fire.
- Drain the fuel from the pre-filter into a container before removing the pre-filter retainer ring.

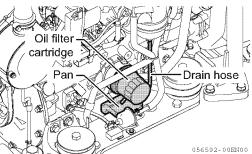
Things to prepare

- Container for fuel waste
- 1. Open the engine hood.
- **2.** Put end of the drain hose **1** on the pan equipped under the engine oil filter, and place the container for fuel waste under the hose.
- 3. Turn the fuel cock 6 to the OFF position.
- 4. Loosen the drain cock 2 and drain the fuel.
- Turn the cup 4 to the left and remove the cup 4.
- **6.** Carefully hold the cup **4** to prevent fuel from spilling, if you spill any fuel, clean up the spill completely.
- **7.** Remove the float **3** from the cup **4**. Pour the contaminants into the container and dispose of it properly.
- **8.** Clean the cup **4**, by using light oil or washing agent.
- 9. Install the new element 5 into the body.

Filter element Part No.					
Filter element	129A00-55730				

- 10. Position the float 3 in the cup 4.
- **11.**Check the condition of the O-ring. Replace if necessary.





- **12.** Install the cup **4** to the bracket by tightening the retaining ring clock wise.
- 13. Close the drain cock 2.
- 14. Turn the fuel cock 6 to the ON position.
- **15.** Wipe off the water and fuel adhered to the drain hose **1**.
- 16. Release the Air. (Refer to page 306)
- 17. Check the fuel leak.
- **18.** Close the engine hood.

Q -Hose 0 D Viewed from under the machine body

026399-04EN00

Replacing the fuel filter element

- Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away.
- At operating temperature, the engine components are hot and can cause a burn.
- Replace the element after the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components could cause a fire.
- Drain the fuel from the fuel filter into a container before removing the fuel filter.

■ Things to prepare

- Container for fuel waste
- Filter wrench for fuel filter cartridge
- 1. Open the engine hood.
- **2.** Place the container for fuel waste under the fuel filter.
- **3.** Turn the fuel filter cartridge counterclockwise with the filter wrench to remove it.
- **4.** Clean the filter mount and apply engine oil to the seal surface of a new fuel filter, then mount the filter. At that time, fill the with fuel.
- **5.** After replacing the fuel filter element, release air.

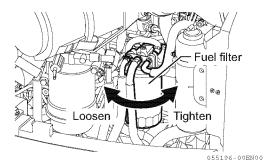
(Refer to page 306.)

6. After air release, start the engine and check for fuel leak.

If the there is nothing wrong, stop the engine and close the engine hood.

IMPORTANT

So that the filter cartridge should not be too tightened, turn it lightly until the seal surface contacts with the filter mount, then tighten the filter by 2/3 of a turn.



■ How to release air:

This machine is equipped with an automatic air release device (solenoid pump). Release air according to the procedure.

- 1. Fill up the fuel tank.
- **2.** Set the lock lever to the "LOCK" position and the accelerator lever to the "RUN" position.
- **3.** Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position to turn on electricity for approximately 25 to 30 seconds. (Air is normally released in 25 to 30 seconds automatically.)
- **4.** Turn the starter switch to the "START" position to start the engine.

IMPORTANT

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait at least a minute before again attempting to restart the engine.

Whenever you refuel, release air in the same way. After the engine starts, sometimes it will revolve irregularly. In that case, turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position, wait for one minute or more and turn the starter switch to the "START" position again.

Replacing the engine oil and the engine oil filter element

A WARNING

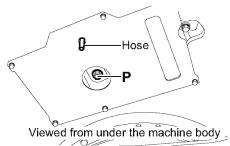
- Do not replace the oil immediately after the engine stops to prevent bodily injury, because all the components are hot.
- Do not allow hot oil or components to contact skin.
- Replace the oil and the filter element after the oil and the components have cooled sufficiently.

■ Things to prepare

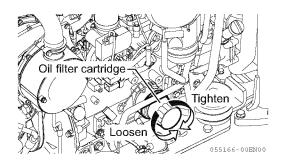
• Replacement new oil and container for waste oil

Model	Amount of oil	Container		
SV100-2A	11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)	11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)		

- · Filter wrench for engine oil filter cartridge
- Swing the upperstructure so that the drain plug
 P on the bottom of the engine is positioned in the middle of the right and left crawlers.
- Put the container for waste oil under the drain plug P and hose on the bottom of the machine body.
- **3.** Slowly remove the drain plug **P** so that the oil should not splash on you and drain the waste oil.
- Check the waste oil, and contact your dealer if any metallic particles or foreign objects are mixed in it.
- 5. Reinstall the drain plug P.
- Furn the oil filter cartridge counterclockwise with the filter wrench to remove it. After removing the oil filter, wait 10 to 15 minutes before replacing it.
- 7. Wipe the dirt and oil from the filter mount and apply engine oil (or apply grease lightly) to the seal surface of a new oil filter (cartridge).







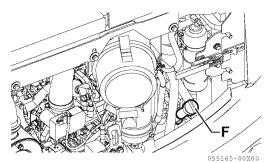
- **8.** When mounting the new filter (cartridge), turn it 2/3 of a turn after the seal surface has contacted the filter mount.
- **9.** After replacing the oil filter (cartridge), add engine oil up to the upper limit (H) mark on the oil dipstick through the oil supply port **F**.
- **10.** Idle the engine for several minutes and then stop the engine. Then check that the oil level exceeds the midpoint between the upper and lower limit marks on the oil dipstick.

Refer to Section "8.3 Checking before start-up" on page 297.

11. Install and tighten the oil supply port cap securely.

Replace the engine oil and the oil filter element 1 year after the previous replacement, even if the service hours have not reached 500 hours.

Also replace them at 500 service hours, even if 1 year has not elapsed since the previous replacement.



Replacing the air cleaner element

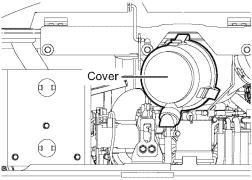
A WARNING

Never attempt to replace the air cleaner element while the engine is running. Replace the air cleaner element after the engine has been stopped and has cooled sufficiently.

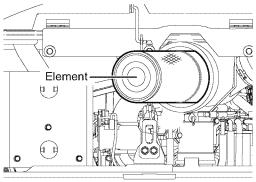
- **1.** Open the engine hood.
- 2. Remove the clips and remove the cover.
- 3. Remove the element.

Cover the connector side in the back of the air cleaner body with a clean cloth and tape to prevent dirt from entering.

- 4. Clean the dust cup and the inside of the body. Remove the clean cloth and the tape used to cover the connector in the back side of the body.
- 5. Install a new element.
- **6.** Install the dust cup, while checking the arrow on it.
- 7. Close the engine hood rear cover.







055203-00EN00

Replacing the hydraulic oil return filter element

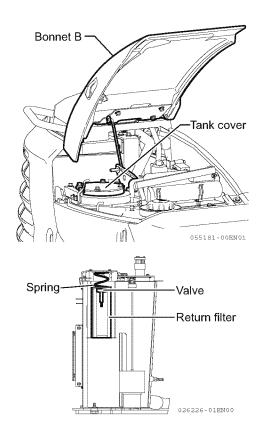
A WARNING

- The hydraulic oil and the tank are hot and under pressure immediately after the engine stops, and can cause bodily injury.
 Be sure to replace the filter only after the hydraulic oil tank has cooled enough to permit touching the tank surface with your bare hand.
- If the cover of the tank is removed too quickly, the cover may pop out due to the spring force applied to the filter. Also, the hydraulic oil may spout out if the pressure inside the tank has not been gradually relieved.
- Slowly loosen the four bolts diagonally to remove the cover.
- **1.** Open the bonnet B and clean the area around the tank cover on top of the hydraulic oil tank, using a cloth.
- **2.** Slowly loosen the bolts to relieve the internal pressure, and remove the tank cover.
- **3.** Remove the old filter, install the valve on the new filter, and then install the new filter into the tank.

IMPORTANT

Do not allow any dirt to enter the tank when installing the new return filter element.

- **4.** Clean the contact face of the cover with a cloth and check the O-ring. If the O-ring is damaged, replace the O-ring with a new one and then reinstall the tank cover.
- 5. Install the bonnet B.



8.8 Maintenance every 1000 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50, 100, 250 and 500 service hours.

Replacing the lube oil for the travel reduction gearbox

A WARNING

• The gear oil and casing of the reduction gearbox are hot immediately after ceasing machine operation and can cause bodily injury such as a burn.

Do not allow hot oil or the gearbox to contact your skin.

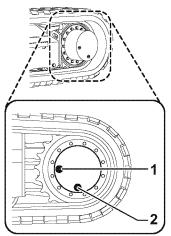
Replace the oil after the oil and the gearbox have cooled enough to permit touching the surface of the gearbox casing with your bare hand.

• At operating temperature, the reduction gearbox is hot and its contents are under pressure.

In such condition, the oil or a plug may be ejected violently, causing bodily injury. Loosen a plug slowly to gradually relieve the residual pressure.

■ Things to prepare

- Container for waste oil : Capacity of 2.22 Qts. (2.1 L) or more
- New oil : 2.22 Qts. (2.1 L) for right and left each
- Oil jug : Capacity of 2.22 Qts. (2.1 L) or more
- **1.** Place the machine so that the oil drain port **2** will be in the lowest position, as illustrated in the right figure.
- 2. Put the container for the waste oil under the oil drain port 2.
- **3.** Remove the oil drain port **2**, and level port **1** plugs with a hexagon socket screw key to drain the waste oil.



128086-00X00

- 4. After draining the waste oil, reinstall the plug to the oil drain port 2.
 Tightening torque : 57.9 to 86.8 ft•lbf (78.5 to 117.7 N•m)
- 5. Replenish gear oil to the specified level through the oil level port 1. Refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page 267 for the oil to be used.
- When the oil overflows from the level port 1, reinstall the oil level port 1 and drain port 2 plugs.

Tightening torque : 57.9 to 86.8 ft•lbf (78.5 to 117.7 N•m)

Replacing the hydraulic oil and cleaning the suction filter element

A WARNING

• The hydraulic oil and the tank are hot and under pressure at operating temperature. Never replace the oil immediately after operation is stopped.

Wait until the tank has cooled enough to permit you to touch its surface with your bare hand.

- When removing the oil supply port cap, slowly loosen it to relieve the internal pressure, then remove the cap carefully.
- If the cover of the tank is removed too quickly, the cover may pop out due to the spring force applied to the filter. Also, the hydraulic oil may spout out if the pressure inside the tank has not been gradually relieved.

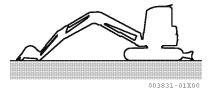
Slowly loosen the four bolts diagonally to remove the cover.

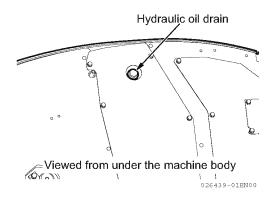
■ Things to prepare

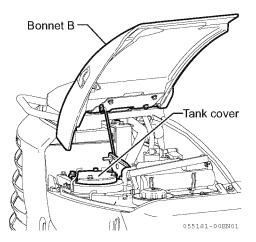
Container for waste oil:

Capacity of 15.8 Gals. (60 L) or more

- New hydraulic oil: 15.8 Gals. (60 L) [to be changed] 30.4 Gals. (115 L) [Required new oil amount when all oil is drained from all of the hydraulic equipment, pipes and hoses].
- O-ring
- **1.** Swing the upperstructure so that the drain plug on the bottom of the hydraulic oil tank is positioned in the middle of the right and left crawlers.
- **2.** Retract the bucket and arm cylinders to their stroke ends, lower the boom and put the bucket teeth on the ground.
- **3.** Put the blade on the ground and stop the engine.
- **4.** Place the container for waste oil under the drain plug.







MAINTENANCE

- **5.** Remove the drain plug and drain the waste oil. When removing the drain plug, take care that the oil does not splash on you.
- 6. Open the bonnet B and clean the area around the tank cover on the top of the hydraulic oil tank with a cloth. Slowly loosen the bolts diagonally and remove the tank cover.
- **7.** Check the drain plug for metallic particles and remove them, if any.
- **8.** Degrease and wash the threads of the plug, and replace the O-ring in the plug with a new one.
- **9.** After draining the waste oil, install and tighten the drain plug.

Tightening torque: 79.6 ft•lbf (107.9 N•m)

- **10.** Remove the suction filter from the tank. Remove the dirt from the filter and wash it with a washing agent or light oil.
- 11. Check the filter and the O-ring mounted on it. If either the filter or the O-ring is damaged or cracked, replace the filter with a new one and install it in the tank.

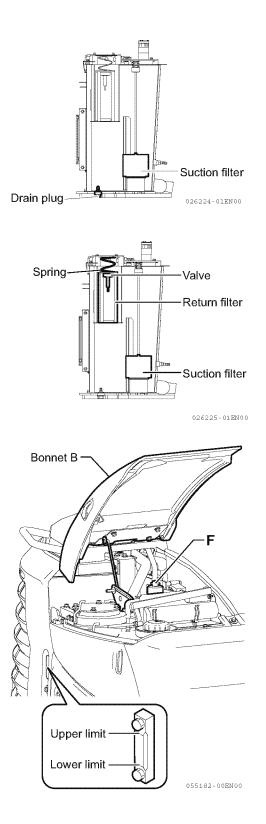
IMPORTANT

Do not allow any dirt to enter the tank when installing the filter.

12. Add oil to the specified level in the hydraulic oil tank. Check the oil level with the oil level gauge on the side of the tank and do not add oil beyond the midpoint between the upper and lower limit marks on the oil level gauge. Refer to Section "4. Fueling, Oiling and Greasing Based on Temperature Range" on page

267 for the oil to be used.

13. Wipe off the area around the tank cover with a cloth and check the O-ring. If the O-ring is damaged, replace it with a new one and then mount the tank cover.



- **14.** After replacing the oil, set all control levers to the neutral position and idle the engine for approximately 2 to 3 minutes and then test each implement for proper operation.
- **15.** Close the bonnet B.

Replacing the line filter

A WARNING

The oil is hot immediately after ceasing machine operation. Do not replace the filter immediately. Replace the filter after the oil has cooled down sufficiently.

Things to prepare

- · Container for waste oil
- 1. Release the internal pressure of the hydraulic circuit.

For detailed depressurization procedures, refer to Section "Releasing the internal pressure of the hydraulic circuit by accumulator" on page 218.

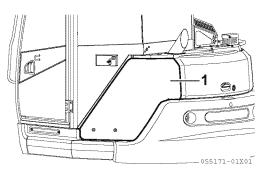
- 2. Open the engine hood cover.
- 3. Remove the cover L 1.
- 4. Place the container under the line filter.
- Put a wrench on the hexagonal bottom portion of the case 6 and turn it counterclockwise to loosen the case 6.
- 6. Remove the case 6 and pull out the element 3 from the head 2.
- 7. Clean the case 6.
- Remove the spring 4 at the bottom of the element 3 and clean it. Then, install it at the bottom of a new element.
- 9. Insert the new element into the head 2.
- **10.** Replace the O-ring **5** on the case **6** with a new one.

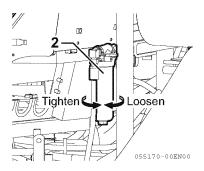
O-ring size: JASO #2053-Hs90

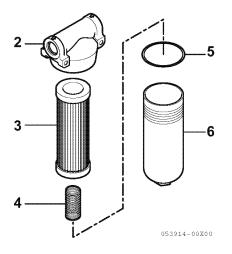
11. Screw the case **6** into the head **2**. Tightening torque:

18.1 to 25.3 ft•lbf (24.5 to 34.3 N•m)

- **12.** Run the engine and check for oil leaks.
- **13.** Install the cover L **1** and close the engine hood cover.







Checking and adjusting the intake/exhaust valve clearances

Ask your dealer for checking and adjusting.

8.9 Maintenance every 1500 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50, 100, 250 and 500 service hours.

Checking crankcase breather system

Ask your dealer for checking.

Cleaning EGR cooler

Ask your dealer for cleaning.

8.10 Maintenance every 2000 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50, 100, 250, 500 and 1000 service hours.

Cleaning the inside of the cooling system

- The cooling water is very hot immediately after the engine has stopped. Discharging the cooling water immediately after the engine has stopped may cause burns. Start cleaning the inside of the cooling system after the engine has cooled down sufficiently.
- Stepping into the area behind the machine to clean the inside of the cooling system while the engine is running is very dangerous, because you may not be visible from the operator's seat and the machine could start moving.

Also, with the engine hood being open, contacting the radiator fan or fan belt could result in serious bodily injury.

Never step into the area behind the machine while the engine is running.

Do not remove the radiator cap while the water temperature in the radiator is high. Hot water may spout from the radiator.
When you do remove the radiator cap after the water has cooled down, slowly turn the radiator cap to relieve the internal pressure before removing it.

Clean the inside of the cooling system and replace the anti-freeze for every 2000 service hours or within 2 years, whichever first occurs.

Park the machine on level ground to clean or replace the cooling water.

The YANMAR Long-Life Coolant has anticorrosive effect as well as anti-freeze effect.

Though the mixing ratio of an anti-freeze to water differs with air temperature, at least 30% of antifreeze by volume is required to obtain anticorrosive effect.

Determine the mixing ratio of the anti-freeze to water on the basis of the lowest past temperature, referring to the ratio table on the next page.

Actually set the temperature 18°F (10°C) lower than the lowest temperature.

Table of mixing ratio of anti-freeze to water

Low	est temperature	°F (°C)	5 (-15)	-4 (-20)	-13 (-25)	-22 (-30)	-31 (-35)	-40 (-40)
SV100-2A	Amount of anti-freeze	Qts. (L)	3.38 (3.2)	3.91 (3.7)	4.44 (4.2)	5.07 (4.8)	5.60 (5.3)	6.13 (5.8)
	Amount of water	Qts. (L)	7.82 (7.4)	7.29 (6.9)	6.76 (6.4)	6.13 (5.8)	5.60 (5.3)	5.07 (4.8)

Note :

At the delivery from the factory, water and antifreeze are mixed in the ratio shown above for the - $31^{\circ}F$ (-35°C) temperature.

A DANGER

Keep sources of ignition away from the antifreeze because it is flammable.

Use tap water. If you obtain water from a river, a well or a small water-supply system, consult your dealer.

Use a densitometer to control the mixing ratio.

WARNING

When removing the drain plug, be careful that the anti-freeze does not contact your eyes or skin.

How to clean the inside of the cooling system

Things to prepare

- Container for cooling water
 Capacity (with sub-tank capacity) :
 11.2 Qts. (10.6 L) or more
- Hose for supplying the water
- **1.** Swing the upper structure so that the drain plug is positioned in the middle of the right and left crawlers.
- **2.** Put the container for cooling water under the drain plug.
- **3.** Remove the cover, slowly remove the radiator cap, pour in the washing agent and mount the cap.

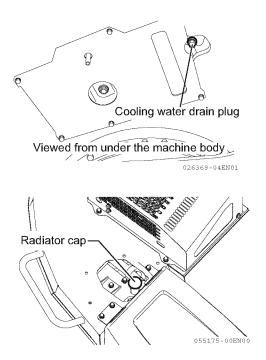
IMPORTANT

Washing methods vary depending on the manufacturer of the washing agent. Follow the instructions of the manufacturer.

- **4.** Start the engine until the water temperature rises to 176 °F (80°C) or more and idle the engine for 10 to 15 minutes. Then stop the engine.
- **5.** After the engine has cooled down, slowly loosen the drain plug to drain the water, and remove the radiator cap.

When the drain plug is removed, the water in the radiator is completely discharged.

6. After the water is completely discharged, reinstall the drain plug and pour tap water into the water supply port of the radiator.

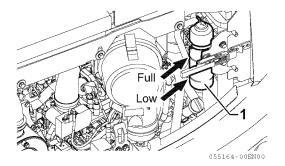


7. When the cooling system is filled with water, remove the drain plug, idle the engine and flush the cooling system with running water until clean water comes out.

While flushing with running water, always keep the cooling system completely filled with water by regulating the amounts of water to be drained out and poured in.

Hold the water supply hose securely while flushing with running water.

- **8.** After flushing with running water, stop the engine, drain the cooling system completely and then install the drain plug.
- **9.** Pour water mixed with anti-freeze into the water supply port of the radiator, to fill it up.
- 10. To bleed air, idle the engine for 5 to 6 minutes and then run the engine without load at high speed for 5 to 6 minutes. (While running the engine, keep the radiator cap removed.)
- **11.** Approximately 5 minutes after stopping the engine, pour water mixed with anti-freeze up to the water supply port of the radiator, and install and tighten the cap.
- 12. Drain the cooling water from the sub-tank 1, wash the inside of the sub-tank 1 and pour water mixed with anti-freeze up to the "FULL" level.



Checking the accumulator

High pressure nitrogen gas is enclosed in the accumulator. Incorrect handling of the accumulator could cause bodily injury due to an explosion. When handling the accumulator, the following precautions shall be observed:

- Do not disassemble.
- Keep sparks or flames away.
- Do not drill, weld or melt.
- Do not give an impact such as hitting and rolling over.
- The pressure of the hydraulic circuit cannot be relieved completely. When removing the hydraulic equipment, do not work in the direction of oil injection. Loosen the screws slowly.
- As it is necessary to relieve the enclosed gas at the time of disposal, ask your dealer.

IMPORTANT

Continuing to operate the accumulator with the reduced enclosed nitrogen gas pressure will result in failure to relieve the pressure of the hydraulic circuit at the time of machine failures.

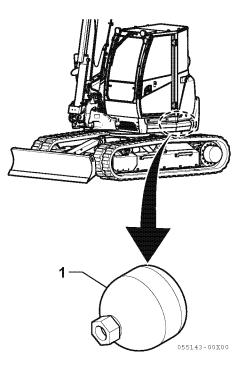
■ Function of accumulator

The accumulator **1** accumulates the pressure of the operating circuit. As the operating circuit is activated for awhile even after stopping the engine, the following can be done:

- By moving the control levers to the direction of lowering the implement, it can go down on the ground with its self-weight.
- The pressure of the hydraulic circuit can be released.

Note:

The function can be used when the starter switch is "ON" and the lock lever is in the "Unlock" position.



■ Checking the accumulator function

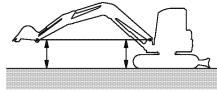
CAUTION

Check to see that there are no people or obstacles around the machine before operating the engine.

Check the nitrogen gas enclosed pressure according to the following procedures:

Perform the steps 1-2 while the engine is starting.

- **1.** Stop the machine on level ground with good footing.
- **2.** Keep the implement at maximum reach posture and keep the bucket pivot pin and the boom pivot pin at the same height.



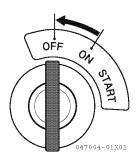
036014-01X00

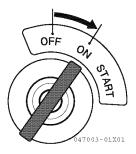
Perform the steps 3-5 within 15 seconds.

As the accumulator pressure is gradually reduced after stopping the engine, checking can only be done right after stopping the engine.

3. While keeping the implement at maximum reach posture, set the starter switch to the "OFF" position to stop the engine.

4. Set the starter switch to the "ON" position.

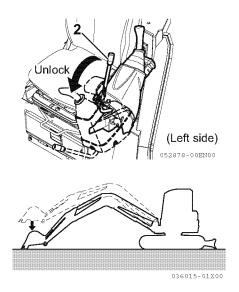




- **5.** Set the lock lever **2** to the "Unlock" position and move the control levers to the boom lower direction at full stroke to check if the implement can go down on the ground.
- 6. If the implement can go down on the ground with its self-weight, the accumulator is normal. If the implement cannot be lowered or stops along the way, the gas enclosed pressure of the accumulator for operation circuit could be reduced.

Ask your dealer to check the machine.

7. Set the lock lever to the "LOCK" position and turn the starter switch "OFF" after the completion of checking.



Checking and replacing fuel piping, cooling water piping

Ask your dealer for checking and replacing.

Lapping the intake/exhaust valves

Ask your dealer for lapping.

8.11 Maintenance every 3000 service hours

Also perform the maintenance every 50, 100, 250, 500, 1000 and 1500 service hours.

Checking turbocharger

Ask your dealer for checking.

Checking, cleaning and testing EGR valve

Ask your dealer for checking, cleaning and testing.

Cleaning EGR lead valve

Ask your dealer for cleaning.

Checking and testing intake throttle valve

Ask your dealer for checking and testing.

Checking and cleaning fuel injector

Ask your dealer for checking and cleaning.

SPECIFICATIONS AND DIMENSIONAL DIAGRAMS

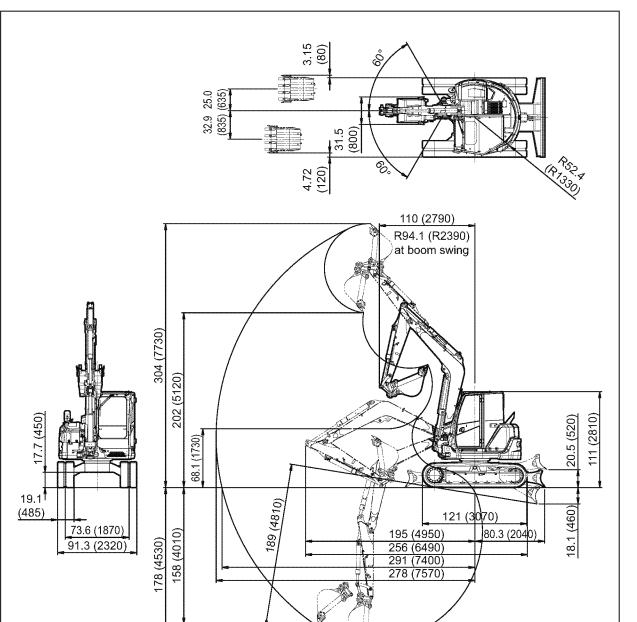
1. Specifications and Dimensional Diagrams 328

1. Specifications and Dimensional Diagrams

■ Specifications (Standard arm type)

Weight (in compliance with SAE standards) Operating mass Rubber crawler Ibs. (kg) 21550 (9775) Machine mass Rubber crawler Ibs. (kg) 21650 (9825) Machine mass Rubber crawler Ibs. (kg) 16993 (7300) Vithout implement) Steel crawler Ibs. (kg) 16094 (7300) • Working range and performance E E Bucket capacity, standard cu.ft (cu.m) 10.59 (0.3) Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> exit down the blade> in. (mm) 10.59 (0.3) Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810) Maximum durping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum durping height in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Act swinging the boom> in. (mm) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9)			Туре	SV100-2A
Operating mass Rubber crawler Ibs. (kg) 21550 (9775) Machine mass Rubber crawler ibs. (kg) 16960 (9825) Machine mass Rubber crawler ibs. (kg) 16993 (7250) Steel crawler ibs. (kg) 16094 (7300) 10094 (7300) • Working range and performance 0.5 (0.3) 0.5 (0.3) Bucket capacity, standard cu.ft (cu.m) 10.5 (0.0) 0.5 (0.0) Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 31.50 (800) 0.5 (400) Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> 0.5 (0.0) Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)	Items			Cabin
Steel crawler Ibs. (kg) 21660 (9825) Machine mass (without implement) Rubber crawler Ibs. (kg) 15983 (7250) Steel crawler Ibs. (kg) 16094 (7300) • Working range and performance Bucket capacity, standard ou.ft (cu.m) 10.59 (0.3) Bucket vidht, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Maximum digging depth (standard) in. (mm) Auximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth (in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Steel crawler In (mm) Steel crawler in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Steel crawler MeX Boom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Steel crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler MPH (km/h) 2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2) Steel crawler PSI (KPa) 5.6 (3.8) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler	• Weight (in compliance w	ith SAE standard	s)	
Machine mass (without implement) Rubber crawler Steel crawler Ibs. (kg) 15983 (725) • Working range and performance Ibs. (kg) 16094 (7300) Bucket width, standard u.ft (cu.m) 10.59 (0.3) Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> <at blade="" down="" the=""> in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum cutting height in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum duging radius of the ground in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Boom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (buc-ket) lbs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4)/ 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler PSI (KPa) 5.5 (37.9)<td>Operating mass</td><td>Rubber crawler</td><td>lbs. (kg)</td><td>21550 (9775)</td></at>	Operating mass	Rubber crawler	lbs. (kg)	21550 (9775)
Steel crawler Ibs. (kg) 16094 (7300) • Working range and performance		Steel crawler	lbs. (kg)	21660 (9825)
Working range and performance 0.004 (1000) Bucket capacity, standard cu.ft (cu.m) 10.59 (0.3) Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Auximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum cutting height in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Step crawler in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Boom swing angle: left / right degrees Boom swing angle: left / right degrees Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) Average ground pressure, standard crawler GPM 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×</variable>	Machine mass	Rubber crawler	lbs. (kg)	15983 (7250)
Bucket capacity, standard cu.ft (cu.m) 10.59 (0.3) Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Auximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum duting height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Soom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) lbs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Stel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) Stel crawler standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displacement (L / min) 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3</gear>	(without implement)	Steel crawler	lbs. (kg)	16094 (7300)
Bucket width, standard in. (mm) 31.50 (800) Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 158 (4010) Maximum cutting height in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 291 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> sat swinging the boom> in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Boom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Steel crawler PSI (kPa) Average ground pressure, standard crawler Ruber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displace===t GPM 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System reli</gear></variable>	 Working range and performance 	ormance		
Maximum digging depth in. (mm) 178 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 158 (4010) Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Soom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (NN) 12027 (54.3) Travel speed : high / Iow Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler MPH (km/h) 2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2) Swing speed Average ground pressure, standard crawler Ruber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> Vype System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine engine Model 4TNV98cT-VBV</gear>	Bucket capacity, standard		cu.ft (cu.m)	10.59 (0.3)
<at blade="" down="" the=""> in. (mm) 1/8 (4530) <189 (4810)> Maximum vertical wall digging depth in. (mm) 158 (4010) Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 201 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Soom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) 1.6 (2.5) Steel crawler MPH (km/h) 2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2) Swing speed Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displacement GPM 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV 8184 doutpu Rated output H</gear></variable></at>	Bucket width, standard		in. (mm)	31.50 (800)
Maximum cutting height in. (mm) 304 (7730) Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 291 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 291 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Search 60 / 60 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, Steel crawler MPH (km/h) 2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) standard crawler Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) 9 Hydraulic pump displacement GPM 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct</gear></gear></variable>	Maximum digging depth <at blade="" down="" the=""></at>		in. (mm)	178 (4530) <189 (4810)>
Maximum dumping height in. (mm) 202 (5120) Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 291 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Second Strain Strai	Maximum vertical wall diggi	ng depth	in. (mm)	158 (4010)
Maximum digging radius of the ground in. (mm) 291 (7400) Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Second swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displacement GPM (L / min) 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34) Fan belt (V-belt) size - A48</gear></variable>	Maximum cutting height		in. (mm)	304 (7730)
Front minimum swing radius in. (mm) 110 (2790) <94 (2390)> Boom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) lbs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4)/ 1.6 (2.5) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) standard crawler Steel crawler PSI (kPa) Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displacement GPM (L / min) 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa)</gear>	Maximum dumping height		in. (mm)	202 (5120)
<at boom="" swinging="" the=""> In. (mm) 110 (2/90) <94 (2390)> Boom swing angle : left / right degrees 60 / 60 Maximum digging force (bucket) lbs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4)/ 1.6 (2.5) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34) Fan bett (V-belt) size - A48</gear></gear></gear></gear></at>	Maximum digging radius of	the ground	in. (mm)	291 (7400)
Maximum digging force (bucket) Ibs. (kN) 12207 (54.3) Travel speed : high / low Rubber crawler MPH (km/h) 2.7 (4.4) / 1.6 (2.5) Swing speed rpm 9.1 Average ground pressure, standard crawler Rubber crawler PSI (kPa) 5.5 (37.9) Steel crawler PSI (kPa) 5.6 (38.8) Hydraulic pump displacement GPM (L / min) 20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)</gear></variable>	Front minimum swing radius <at boom="" swinging="" the=""></at>		in. (mm)	110 (2790) <94 (2390)>
Rubber crawlerMPH (km/h)2.7 (4.4)/ 1.6 (2.5)Travel speed : high / lowRubber crawlerMPH (km/h)2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2)Swing speedrpm9.1Average ground pressure, standard crawlerRubber crawlerPSI (kPa)5.5 (37.9)Steel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.6 (38.8)Hydraulic pump displacementGPM (L / min)20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• Engine-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineModel-4TNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</gear></variable>	Boom swing angle : left / rig	iht	degrees	60 / 60
Travel speed : high / IowSteel crawlerMPH (km/h)2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2)Swing speedrpm9.1Average ground pressure, standard crawlerRubber crawlerPSI (kPa)5.5 (37.9)Steel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.6 (38.8)Hydraulic pump displacementGPM (L / min)20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• EngineVertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineModel-4TNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</gear></variable>	Maximum digging force (bu	cket)	lbs. (kN)	12207 (54.3)
Steel crawlerMPH (km/h)2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2)Swing speedrpm9.1Average ground pressure, standard crawlerRubber crawlerPSI (kPa)Steel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.5 (37.9)Steel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.6 (38.8)Hydraulic pump displacementGPM (L / min)20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• EngineType-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineModel-4TNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</br></gear></variable>	Travel speed : high / low	Rubber crawler	MPH (km/h)	2.7 (4.4)/ 1.6 (2.5)
Average ground pressure, standard crawlerRubber crawlerPSI (kPa)5.5 (37.9)Steel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.6 (38.8)Hydraulic pump displacementGPM (L / min)20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• Engine-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineType-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineModelAtteve outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</gear></variable>	naverspeed . high / low	Steel crawler	MPH (km/h)	2.5 (4.0) / 1.4 (2.2)
standard crawlerSteel crawlerPSI (kPa)5.6 (38.8)Hydraulic pump displacementGPM (L / min)20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• Engine-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineType-4TNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</gear></variable>	Swing speed		rpm	9.1
GPMGPM20.5 (77.7)×2 <variable displacement="" pump="">, 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump="">System relief set pressurePSI (MPa)3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)• Engine-Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engineType-4TNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpm72.0 (53.7) / 2100Displacementcu.in. (cu.cm)202.48 (3318)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48</gear></variable>	Average ground pressure,	Rubber crawler	PSI (kPa)	5.5 (37.9)
Hydraulic pump displacement (L / min) 15.2 (57.5)×1, 5.3 (20)×1 <gear pump=""> System relief set pressure PSI (MPa) 3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1) • Engine Type - Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - 4TNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 448</gear>	standard crawler	Steel crawler	PSI (kPa)	5.6 (38.8)
Engine Type Type Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model O ATNV98CT-VBV Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34) Fan belt (V-belt) size A48	Hydraulic pump displaceme	ent		
Type Vertical four cylinder water-cooled direct injection diesel engine Model - Rated output HP (kW) / rpm Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) Fan belt (V-belt) size -	System relief set pressure		PSI (MPa)	3988×2, 3481×1, 421×1 (27.5×2, 24.0×1, 2.9×1)
TypeengineModel-ATNV98CT-VBVRated outputHP (kW) / rpmDisplacementcu.in. (cu.cm)Compression pressurePSI (MPa)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48	Engine		I	
Rated output HP (kW) / rpm 72.0 (53.7) / 2100 Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34) Fan belt (V-belt) size - A48	Туре		-	-
Displacement cu.in. (cu.cm) 202.48 (3318) Compression pressure PSI (MPa) 455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34) Fan belt (V-belt) size - A48	Model		-	4TNV98CT-VBV
Compression pressurePSI (MPa)455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)Fan belt (V-belt) size-A48	Rated output		HP (kW) / rpm	72.0 (53.7) / 2100
Fan belt (V-belt) size - A48	Displacement		cu.in. (cu.cm)	202.48 (3318)
	Compression pressure		PSI (MPa)	455 to 484 (3.14 to 3.34)
Generator capacity V / A 12 / 80	Fan belt (V-belt) size		-	A48
	Generator capacity		V/A	12 / 80

• Battery type and capacity......130E41R-MF, 12V, 92Ah (5 hours rate capacity)



■ Model view and working range

Unit: in. (mm)

057616-00EN02

OPTIONAL PARTS AND ATTACHMENTS

1.	General Precautions	332
1.1	Safety precautions	332
1.2	Precautions for mounting	
	an attachment (implement)	333

1.3 Prohibitions while the Machine is mounted with an Attachment ... 334

1. General Precautions

1.1 Safety precautions

The mounting of attachments and optional parts that are not authorized by YANMAR may cause accidents as well as shorten the machine life.

If you need to mount any attachments other than those described in this manual, contact your dealer. If you fail to do so, the installation and use of unauthorized attachments and parts may void your Warranty.

WARNING

Precautions for mounting and dismounting an attachment

When mounting or dismounting an attachment, observe the following precautions for safety.

- When mounting or dismounting a heavy implement or attachment, place the machine on level, solid ground.
- To prevent clashing against cabin or canopy, never mount attachment over Max. wrist radius.
- When you work together with a partner, define hand signals and communicate in accordance with those signals.
- When moving a heavy load [more than 55 lbs. (25 kg)], use a crane.
- When removing a heavy part, be sure to support it adequately.
- When lifting such a part with a crane, take note of its center of gravity.
- Do not mount or dismount a heavy part while suspending it with a crane. Be sure to support it securely on a stable base.
- Securely support any attachment that has been removed or is to be installed, and take adequate precautions not to let it fall down.
- Never stand directly under a load suspended by a crane. Stand far enough away to be safe if the load should fall.

IMPORTANT

Comply with all licensing requirements before operating a crane.

Do not permit an unauthorized person to operate a crane.

For more information about the procedures for mounting and dismounting attachments, ask your dealer.

1.2 Precautions for mounting an attachment (implement)

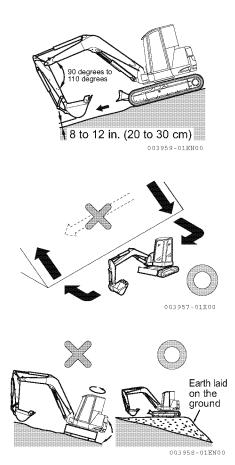
A WARNING

A long implement may throw a machine off balance, and may cause the machine to roll over when the machine descends or swings on a slope.

The following operations are especially dangerous, and must never be done.

- Descending a slope with the implement raised
- Traversing across a slope
- Swinging on a slope
- If you mount an unusually heavy implement (attachment) on the machine, the inertia of the upperstructure will increase so that the upperstructure will continue to turn over a longer distance after it has been deactivated. This can mislead the operator about the safe distance between the swinging implement and an object nearby and could cause the implement to bump against the object. To avoid this type of accident, deactivate the upperstructure a little earlier than usual. Because of increased inertia, the implement will also drop a greater distance after it has been stopped in mid-air. (The unintentional drifting of the implement will be greater.)
- Be sure that the boom and the arm have been mounted correctly. Otherwise, serious accidents or damage may occur. If you do not know how to mount the boom or the arm correctly, ask your dealer.
- If you mount a long implement, you may misjudge the distance between the implement and a nearby object, and cause the implement to bump against the object.

Be sure to provide adequate clearance between long implements and nearby objects.



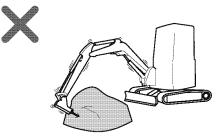
Prohibitions while the Machine is mounted with an 1.3 Attachment

Do not operate the attachment with any hydraulic cylinder at the end of stroke

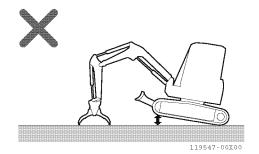
Do not operate the attachment with any hydraulic cylinder fully extended or retracted (i.e. at the end of stroke). Doing so may apply excessive load to the hydraulic cylinder, resulting in damage to the hydraulic cylinder or oil leaks.

■ Do not raise the machine using the attachment mounted on the implement

Do not turn or raise the machine by pressing the attachment against the ground. Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the machine.





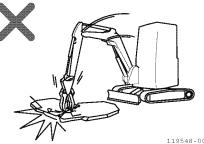


■ Do not strike an object with the attachment mounted on the implement by operating the implement

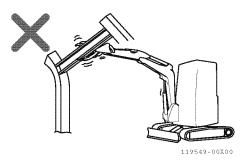
Do not attempt to break an object by striking it or applying pressure to it with the attachment. Doing so may result in damage not only to the attachment, but also to the machine.

■ Do not grab an object with the attachment mounted on the implement at an oblique angle to the object

Grabbing an object with the attachment oblique to the object is prohibited since doing so may result not only in reduced work efficiency, but also in damage to the machine.







Do not twist, pull or drag an object by grabbing it using the attachment mounted on the implement

Twisting, pulling or dragging an object forcibly with the object held by the attachment is prohibited since doing so may result in damage to the attachment or the machine.

Do not turn the upperstructure with an object held by the attachment mounted on the implement

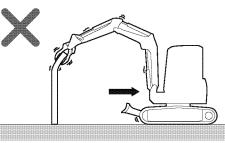
Turning the upperstructure with an object held by the attachment is prohibited since doing so may result in an accident or damage to the attachment or the machine.

Do not run the machine with an object held by the attachment mounted on the implement

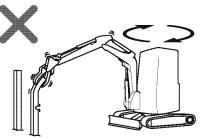
Running the machine with an object held by the attachment is prohibited since doing so may result in an accident or damage to the attachment or the machine.

■ Do not lift a load using the attachment mounted on the implement

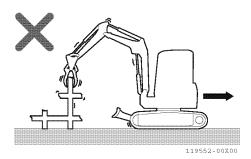
Never lift a load with the attachment using lifting means such as wire ropes since doing so falls outside the scope of the intended use of the machine and can be dangerous.

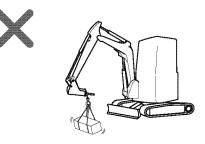


119550-00X00



119551-00X00

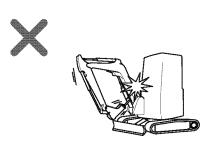




119553-00X00

Be careful that the attachment does not come into contact with other parts

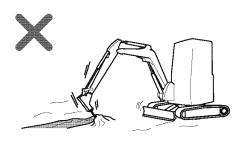
It is possible that the attachment may come into contact with the machine body or the implement. Be careful to avoid such contact during operation.



119554-00X00

Do not rake up objects using the attachment mounted on the implement

Do not rake up objects using the attachment since doing so may result in damage to the attachment or the machine.



119555-00X00

APPENDIX TABLE

1.	List of consumables	338
2.	Fuel, oil and cooling water	339
3.	Required tools	340
4.	Torque table	341
5.	List of essential parts	342
6.	List of error codes displayed	
	on LCD monitor	343

1. List of consumables

The parts in () represent those which must be replaced at the same time.

Item	Name	Q'ty	Replacing time interval
Engine oil filter	Filter 80×80 L	1	Every 500 service hours
Hydraulic oil tank filter	Filter element	1	Every 500 service hours (At first 250 service hours)
Line filter	Filter element	1	Every 1000 service hours
Fuel filter	FO filter 80×142 L	1	Every 500 service hours
Air cleaner	Cleaner element	1	Every 500 service hours
Pre-filter	Filter element	1	Every 500 service hours
Bucket	Point teeth (Pin) (Pin) Side cutter (left) Side cutter (right) (Bolt 22×62) (Nut 22)	4 (4) (4) 1 1 (6) (6)	-

Part to be	Oil type	(°F)	Recomn -4	nendations -14	s with reg 32	gard to te 50	mperatu 68	re ranges 86	- Prescribed	Amount of oil to
refilled		(°C)	-4 (-20)	-14 (-10)	(0)	(10)	(20)	(30)	amount of oil	be changed
				SAE 10	W CJ-4					
Engine oil pan	Engine oil				SAE	10W-30	CJ-4		11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)	11.8 Qts. (11.2 L)
					S/	\E 15W-4	10 CJ-4			
Travel									2.22 Qts. (2.1 L)	2.22 Qts. (2.1 L)
reduction gear	Gear oil				SA	E 90 (GL	- 4)		(For right and left each)	(For right and left each)
Hydraulic oil system	Hydraulic oil					ISO VC	646		In the tank 15.8 Gals. (60 L) Other parts 14.5 Gals. (55 L)	15.9 Gals. (60 L)
Fuel tank	Light oil			No. 1-	D or No.	2-D dies	el fuel		30.4 Gals. (115 L)	-
Cooling system	Water		YANMAR genuine long-life coolant (LLC) added				Radiator 10.7 Qts. (10.2 L) Subtank 0.4 Qts. (0.4 L)	- <u>-</u>		

2. Fuel, oil and cooling water

3. Required tools

The following tools are required for servicing:

No.	Name	Part number	Q'ty
1	Screw driver (universal system)	104200-92350	1
2	Filter wrench 68	119332-92751	1
3	Filter wrench 80	119640-92750	1
4	Filter wrench LO	171301-92750	1
5	Pressuring nozzle	172122-05101	1
6	Wrench 8×10	28110-080100	1
7	Wrench 12×14	28110-120140	2
8	Wrench 17×19	28110-170190	1
9	Wrench 22×24	28110-220240	2
10	Wrench 27×30	28110-270300	1
11	Wrench 32×36	28110-320360	1
12	Hexagon bar wrench 4	28150-040000	1
13	Hexagon bar wrench 5	28150-050000	1
14	Hexagon bar wrench 8	28150-080000	1
15	Box wrench 27×140	28227-271400	1
16	Turning handle 12×250	28230-120250	1
17	Grease hose	933110-09701	1
18	Grease injector 800	933110-09802	1
19	Pliers 200	933171-00470	1

4. Torque table

Bolts or nuts in the metric system should be tightened at the torque described below unless specified otherwise.

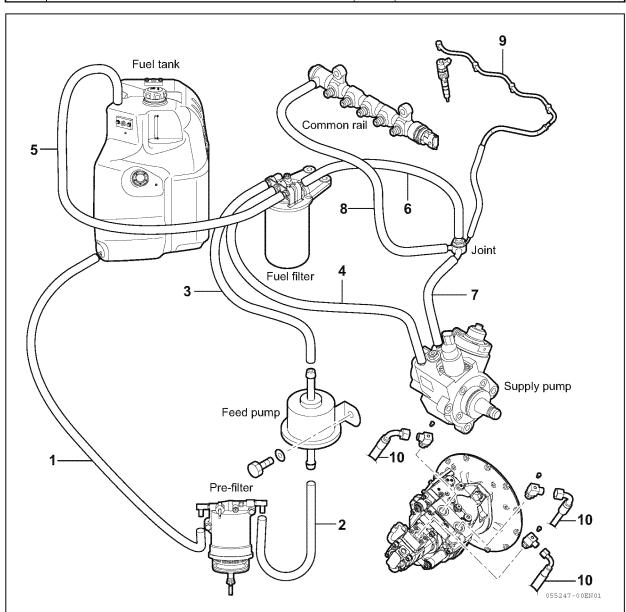
ltem		Thread size $ imes$ pitch	Tightening torque ft•lbf (N•m)	Remarks
Hexagon bolt (7T)	Coarse	M6×1	7.2 to 8.7 (9.8 to 11.8)	Apply 80% tightening torque
Nut	threads	M8×1.25	16.7 to 20.9 (22.6 to 28.4)	when tightened to aluminum.Apply 60% tightening torque
		M10×1.5	32.5 to 43.4 (44.1 to 58.8)	for 4T bolt and lock nut. • Use fine threads for engine
		M12×1.75	58 to 72.4 (78.5 to 98.1)	only.
		M14×2	86.8 to 108.5 (117.7 to 147.1)	
		M16×2	123 to 151.9 (166.7 to 206.0)	
		M18×2.5	173.6 to 209.8 (235.4 to 284.4)	
		M20×2.5	238.7 to 296.6 (323.6 to 402.1)	
	Fine threads	M14×1.5	94 to 108.5 (127.5 to 147.1)	
		M16×1.5	155.5 to 177.2 (210.8 to 240.3)	
PT plug		1/8	7.2 (9.8)	
		1/4	14.5 (19.6)	
		3/8	21.7 (29.4)	-
		1/2	43.4 (58.8)	
Pipe joint bolt		M8	9.4 to 12.3 (12.7 to 16.7)	
		M12	18.1 to 25.3 (24.5 to 34.3)	_
		M14	28.9 to 36.1 (39.2 to 49)	
		M16	36.1 to 43.4 (49.0 to 58.8)	

IMPORTANT

If a part to be tightened is made of resin like a panel board, excessive tightening torque may damage the tightened part. Be careful when tightening.

No.	Essential parts to be replaced periodically	Q'ty	Replacement time intervals
1	Fuel hose (fuel tank to pre-filter)	1	
2	Fuel hose (pre-filter to feed pump)	1	
3	Fuel hose (feed pump to fuel filter)	1	
4	Fuel hose (fuel filter to supply pump)		
5	Fuel hose (fuel filter to fuel tank)		Earlier of either every 2 years or every
6	Fuel hose (joint to fuel filter)	1	2000 service hours
7	Fuel hose (joint to supply pump)	1	
8	Fuel hose (common rail to joint)]
9	Fuel hose (injectors to joint)		
10	Main pump outlet hose (P1, P2, P3 to C/V)	3	

5. List of essential parts



6. List of error codes displayed on LCD monitor

If an error that falls into the "Warning" category occurs, the warning lamp flashes. In such cases, immediately stop operation and take necessary corrective measures.

If an error that falls into the "Caution" category occurs, the caution lamp flashes. In such cases, take necessary corrective measures as soon as possible.

For error items with "Service" shown in the column of "Corrective measures," contact the nearest dealer for inspection and repair.

If an error code other than the ones listed in this table is displayed, contact the nearest dealer.

Error code	Classification	Error description	Corrective measures
00 000051.03	Caution	Intake throttle opening sensor failure	Service
00 000051.04	Caution	Intake throttle opening sensor failure	Service
00 000091.03	Caution	Accelerator sensor failure	Service
00 000091.04	Caution	Accelerator sensor failure	Service
00 000100.01	Warning	Abnormal engine oil pressure	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
00 000100.04	Warning	Engine oil pressure switch failure	Service
00 000102.03	Warning	EGR low pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 000102.04	Warning	EGR low pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 000102.10	Warning	EGR low pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 000102.13	Warning	EGR low pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 000105.03	Warning	Intake manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000105.04	Warning	Intake manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000105.10	Warning	Intake manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000108.03	Caution	Atmospheric pressure sensor failure	Service
00 000108.04	Caution	Atmospheric pressure sensor failure	Service
00 000108.10	Caution	Atmospheric pressure sensor failure	Service
00 000110.00	Warning	Abnormal cooling water temperature	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
00 000110.03	Warning	Cooling water temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000110.04	Warning	Cooling water temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000110.10	Warning	Cooling water temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000157.00	Warning	Abnormal rail pressure (high pressure)	Service
00 000157.03	Warning	Rail pressure sensor failure	Service
00 000157.04	Warning	Rail pressure sensor failure	Service
00 000157.15	Warning	Abnormal rail pressure	Service
00 000157.16	Warning	Common rail pressure limiting valve opening	Service
00 000157.18	Warning	Abnormal rail pressure	Service
00 000167.01	Caution	Insufficient battery charge	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
00 000167.05	Caution	Battery charge switch failure	Service
00 000172.03	Caution	Intake temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000172.04	Caution	Intake temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000173.03	Warning	Exhaust manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000173.04	Warning	Exhaust manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000173.10	Warning	Exhaust manifold temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000174.00	Warning	Abnormal fuel temperature	Service
00 000174.03	Warning	Fuel temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000174.04	Warning	Fuel temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000190.00	Warning	Engine overspeed	Service
00 000237.13	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service

Error code	Classification	Error description	Corrective measures
00 000237.31	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service
00 000412.03	Warning	EGR gas temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000412.04	Warning	EGR gas temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000412.10	Warning	EGR gas temperature sensor failure	Service
00 000630.12	Caution	Engine controller failure (EEPROM failure)	Service
00 000633.03	Warning	High pressure pump drive circuit failure	Service
00 000633.05	Warning	High pressure pump drive circuit failure	Service
00 000633.06	Warning	High pressure pump drive circuit failure	Service
00 000651.03	Caution	Cylinder No. 4 injector failure	Service
00 000651.05	Caution	Cylinder No. 4 injector failure	Service
00 000651.06	Caution	Cylinder No. 4 injector failure	Service
00 000652.03	Caution	Cylinder No. 3 injector failure	Service
00 000652.05	Caution	Cylinder No. 3 injector failure	Service
00 000652.06	Caution	Cylinder No. 3 injector failure	Service
00 000653.03	Caution	Cylinder No. 2 injector failure	Service
00 000653.05	Caution	Cylinder No. 2 injector failure	Service
00 000653.06	Caution	Cylinder No. 2 injector failure	Service
00 000654.03	Caution	Cylinder No. 1 injector failure	Service
00 000654.05	Caution	Cylinder No. 1 injector failure	Service
00 000654.06	Caution	Cylinder No. 1 injector failure	Service
00 001209.03	Warning	EGR high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 001209.04	Warning	EGR high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 001209.10	Warning	EGR high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 001209.13	Warning	EGR high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 001485.02	Caution	Main relay failure	Service
00 001485.07	Caution	Main relay failure	Service
00 002791.00	Warning	Abnormal EGR voltage	Service
00 002791.01	Warning	Abnormal EGR voltage	Service
00 002791.07	Warning	EGR feedback failure	Service
00 002791.09	Warning	EGR data failure	Service
00 002791.12	Warning	EGR motor failure	Service
00 002797.06	Caution	Injector drive circuit failure	Service
00 002798.06	Caution	Injector drive circuit failure	Service
00 002950.03	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 002950.04	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 002950.05	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 002950.06	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 002951.03	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 002951.04	Caution	Intake throttle drive circuit failure	Service
00 003242.00	Caution	Abnormal DPF inlet temperature	Service
00 003242.03	Warning	DPF inlet temperature sensor failure	Service
00 003242.04	Warning	DPF inlet temperature sensor failure	Service
00 003242.10	Warning	DPF inlet temperature sensor failure	Service
00 003250.00	Warning	Abnormal DPF intermediate temperature	Service
00 003250.01	Caution	Abnormal DPF intermediate temperature	Service
00 003250.03	Warning	DPF intermediate temperature sensor failure	Service
00 003230.03			

Error code	Classification	Error description	Corrective measures
00 003250.10	Warning	DPF intermediate temperature sensor failure	Service
00 003251.00	Warning	Abnormal DPF differential pressure	Service
00 003251.03	Warning	DPF differential pressure sensor failure	Service
00 003251.04	Warning	DPF differential pressure sensor failure	Service
00 003251.13	Warning	DPF differential pressure sensor failure	Service
00 003609.03	Warning	DPF high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 003609.04	Warning	DPF high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 003609.10	Warning	DPF high pressure side sensor failure	Service
00 003719.00	Warning	DPF backup mode	Service
00 003719.07	Warning	DPF recovery regeneration prohibited	Service
00 003719.09	Warning	DPF recovery regeneration failure	Service
00 003719.16	Caution	Request for DPF stationary regeneration (manual regenera- tion)	Refer to "Handling diesel particulate filter (DPF)"
00 003720.00	Caution	Request for DPF ash cleaning	Service
00 003720.16	Caution	Request for DPF ash cleaning	Service
00 003720.10	Caution	Injector drive circuit failure	Service
00 004795.31	Warning	Removal of DPF substrate/DPF differential pressure sensor failure	Service
00 522243.05	Caution	Startup assist relay failure	Service
00 522243.06	Caution	Startup assist relay failure	Service
00 522400.02	Caution	Crank sensor failure	Service
00 522400.05	Caution	Crank sensor failure	Service
00 522401.02	Caution	Cam sensor failure	Service
00 522401.05	Caution	Cam sensor failure	Service
00 522401.07	Caution	Cam angle offset failure	Service
00 522571.03	Warning	High pressure pump drive circuit failure	Service
00 522571.06	Warning	High pressure pump drive circuit failure	Service
00 522572.06	Warning	Abnormal high pressure pump over current	Service
00 522572.11	Warning	Abnormal high pressure pump overload	Service
00 522573.00	Caution	DPF over accumulation	Service
00 522574.00	Caution	DPF over accumulation	Service
00 522575.07	Caution	DPF regeneration failure	Service
00 522576.12	Caution	Engine controller failure (EEPROMROM failure)	Service
00 522577.11	Caution	DPF regeneration failure	Service
00 522578.12	Caution	Engine controller failure (EEPROMROM failure)	Service
00 522579.12	Warning	EGR motor failure	Service
00 522580.12	Warning	EGR position sensor failure	Service
00 522581.07	Warning	EGR valve failure	Service
00 522582.07	Warning	EGR initialization failure	Service
00 522583.01	Warning	EGR high temperature thermistor failure	Service
00 522584.01	Warning	EGR low temperature thermistor failure	Service
00 522585.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522588.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522589.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522590.12	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522591.12	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522592.12	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522596.09	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service

Error code	Classification	Error description	Corrective measures
00 522600.09	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service
00 522600.09	Warning	CAN communication failure	Service
00 522610.00	Warning	EGR failure	Service
00 522618.09	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service
00 522610.09	Caution	CAN communication failure	Service
00 522019.09	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 522994.04	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523249.04		Crank and cam sensor failure	Service
00 523249.03	Warning Warning	Abnormal rail pressure	Service
00 523460.07	Warning	Cylinder No. 1 injector correction value failure	Service
00 523462.13	Warning	Cylinder No. 2 injector correction value failure	Service
	-	-	
00 523464.13	Warning	Cylinder No. 3 injector correction value failure	Service
00 523465.13	Warning	Cylinder No. 4 injector correction value failure	Service
00 523468.09	Warning	Common rail pressure limiting valve failure	Service
00 523469.00	Warning	Abnormal frequency of common rail pressure limiting valve opening	Service
00 523470.00	Warning	Abnormal time of common rail pressure limiting valve open- ing	Service
00 523471.06	Caution	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523473.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523474.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523475.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523476.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523477.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523478.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523479.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523480.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523481.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523482.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523483.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523484.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523485.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523486.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523487.12	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523488.00	Warning	Engine controller internal failure	Service
00 523489.00	Warning	Common rail pressure limiting valve failure	Service
00 523491.00	Warning	Abnormal fuel temperature at common rail pressure limiting valve opening	Service
28 000096.02	Caution	Fuel sensor failure	Service
28 000096.04	Caution	Fuel sensor failure	Service
28 000100.00	Warning	Abnormal engine oil pressure	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
28 000110.00	Warning	Abnormal cooling water temperature	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
28 000110.02	Caution	Cooling water temperature sensor failure	Service
28 000110.04	Caution	Cooling water temperature sensor failure	Service
28 000167.00	Caution	Insufficient battery charge	Refer to "Troubleshooting"
28 000639.12	Warning	CAN communication failure (engine controller)	Service
28 520777.02	Caution	Hydraulic oil temperature sensor failure	Service
28 520777.04	Caution	Hydraulic oil temperature sensor failure	Service

Error code	Classification	Error description	Corrective measures
28 520780.00	Caution	Air cleaner clogging	Refer to "Checking and cleaning the air cleaner"
28 520805.12	Warning	CAN communication failure (hydraulic controller)	Service
E1 000091.02	Caution	Accelerator sensor failure	Service
E1 000091.03	Caution	Accelerator sensor failure	Service
E1 000091.04	Caution	Accelerator sensor failure	Service
E1 016640.08	Caution	Alternator failure	Service
E1 024832.03	Warning	Abnormal sensor 5V power supply	Service
E1 025088.02	Caution	Hydraulic controller failure (EEPROM error)	Service
E1 025088.12	Caution	Hydraulic controller failure (EEPROM error)	Service
E1 025600.09	Caution	CAN communication failure (engine controller)	Service
E1 025856.09	Caution	CAN communication failure (LCD monitor)	Service
E1 026112.12	Caution	Hydraulic controller failure	Service
E1 026368.12	Caution	Engine controller failure	Service
E1 030464.05	Caution	Pump proportional solenoid valve failure	Service
E1 030464.06	Caution	Pump proportional solenoid valve failure	Service
E1 033024.00	Caution	Abnormal controller power supply voltage (high)	Service
E1 033024.01	Caution	Abnormal controller power supply voltage (low)	Check battery or service
E1 033024.11	Caution	Abnormal controller power supply voltage (low)	Check battery or service
E1 033792.02	Caution	Hydraulic controller failure	Service
E1 034048.02	Caution	Hydraulic controller failure (option unmatched error)	Service

YANMAR AMERICA CORPORATION

101 International Parkway, Adairsville, GA 30103 TEL: (770) 877-7810 FAX: (770) 877-7565

For Emissions or Warranty Information:

Website: http://us.yanmar.com/ E- mail: CS_support@yanmar.com Toll Free Telephone Numbers: 1-855-416-7091 1-800-872-2867

YANMAR CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CO., LTD.

1717-1, Kumano, Chikugo-shi, Fukuoka, 833-0055, Japan TEL: +81-942-53-5465 FAX:+81-942-53-5132

Copyright© 2020 YANMAR CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CO., LTD. All Rights Reserved. This manual may not be reproduced or copied in whole or in part, without the written consent of YANMAR CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CO., LTD.

YANMAR

YANMAR CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CO., LTD.

https://www.yanmar.com